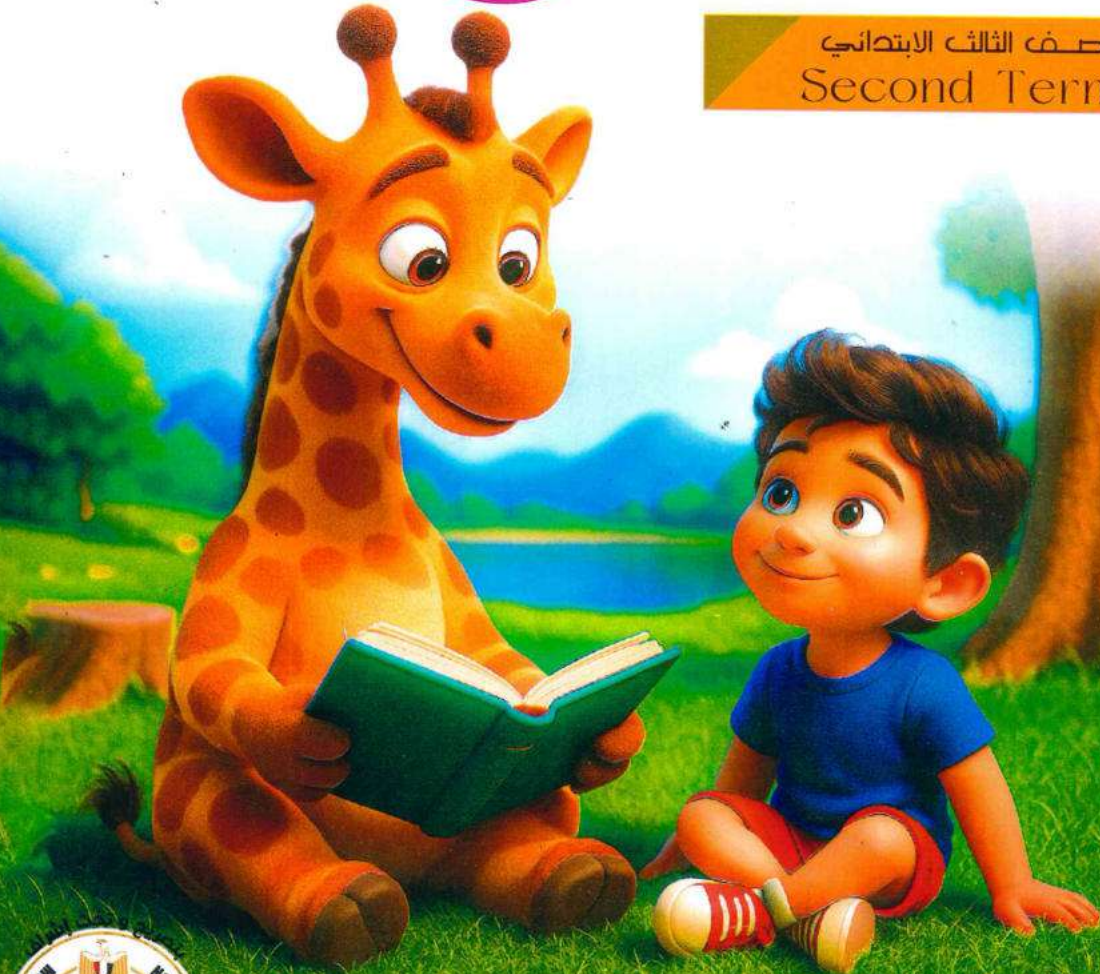


AL-BAHER

English

الصف الثالث الابتدائي
Second Term



2026

3rd
Primary

Contents

Unit (1)	Safety	(3)
Unit (2)	Food and Health	(46)
Unit (3)	Heroes Around Us	(90)
Review on Units (1, 2 & 3)		(129)
Unit (4)	Living with Technology	(132)
Unit (5)	Animals & Habitats	(175)
Unit (6)	Story: The Honest Choice	(217)
Review on Units (4, 5 & 6)		(229)
Assessments		(233)
Answers of paragraphs		(246)
Listening Texts		(248)

Unit 1

Safety الآمان / السلامة



Learning Outcomes

Speaking	Use key vocabulary when speaking about safety. Use imperative sentences to give simple safety instructions. Use modals (must / mustn't) to give simple safety instructions. Participate in role-plays or dialogs related to safety in different settings. State simple safety rules and describe related situations using the target vocabulary.	يستخدم كلمات السلامة المهمة عندما يتحدث عن الأمان. يستخدم جمل الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بسيطة عن السلامة. يستخدم الأفعال المساعدة (يجب / لا يجب) لتوضيح قواعد السلامة. يشارك في حوارات أو تمثيلات عن السلامة في أماكن مختلفة. يلذكر قواعد السلامة البسيطة ويصف مواقف مرتبطة بها باستخدام الكلمات المستهدفة.
Reading	Recognize key safety vocabulary in short reading texts. Identify imperative commands. Identify modals (must, mustn't) in written instructions and stories. Answer basic comprehension questions on short safety-related stories.	يتعرف على كلمات السلامة المهمة في نصوص قصيرة. يحدد أوامر الأمر في الجمل. يميز بين (يجب / لا يجب) في التعليمات والقصص المكتوبة. يجيب عن أسئلة فهم بسيطة في قصص قصيرة عن السلامة.
Listening	Recognize instructions and commands in short spoken text about safety. Answer basic simple questions about safety-related stories. Recognize target consonant blends and key vocabulary in a listening text.	يسمع للنصوص القصيرة عن السلامة وتعرف على التعليمات والأوامر. يجيب عن أسئلة سهلة تتعلق بقصص عن السلامة. يسمع ويميز بين مقاطع الحروف المتشابهة والكلمات المهمة في درس الاستماع.
Writing	Write simple imperative sentences using (must / mustn't) to give safety rules. Write short paragraphs about personal safety experiences. Use exclamation points correctly in writing.	يكتب جمل أمر بسيطة مستخدماً (يجب / لا يجب) لتقديم قواعد السلامة. يكتب فقرات قصيرة عن تجاربه الشخصية في السلامة. يستخدم علامة التعجب بشكل صحيح عند الكتابة.

Lesson

1

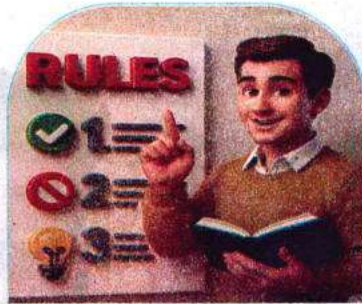
Safety at Home

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



dangerous

خطير



rules

قواعد



emergency

حالة الطوارئ



careful

حريص



hurt

يؤذي



safe

آمن

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

safety

السلامة

floor

أرضية

toys

ألعاب

parents

الوالدان

box

صندوق

moral

العبرة / مغزى

everyone

الجميع

fast food

وجبات سريعة

shelf

رف

room

غرفة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
follow	يتبع followed	jump	يقفز jumped
finish	ينهى finished	call	يتصل called

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
keep	يحافظ على kept	read	يقرأ read
put	يضع put	leave	يترك left
fall	يقع fell	have / has	لديه - عنده had

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

keep us safe	يحافظ على سلامتنا	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة
That's right!	هذا صحيح!	on the shelf	على الرف
stay calm	يبقى هادئاً	follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
on the floor	على الأرضية	get hurt	يتعرض للأذى

Definitions تعريفات

moral عبرة - مغزى: هو الدرس الذي تعلمته من القصة the lesson learned from a story

Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Mother : Ali, we have rules at home to keep us **safe**.

يا علي، عندنا قواعد في البيت للحفاظ على سلامتنا.

Ali : Yes, Mom. If I follow the **rules**, I will not get **hurt**.

نعم يا أمي، إذا اتبعت القواعد فلن أتعرض للأذى.

Mother : That's right! Always be **careful** when you play.

هذا صحيح! كن حذرًا دائمًا عندما تلعب.

Ali : I put my toys in the box so no one falls.

أضع ألعابي في الصندوق حتى لا يقع أحد.

Mother : Very good. That keeps the house safe for everyone.

ممتاز! هذا يجعل البيت آمنًا للجميع.

Ali : Yes, Mom. Not following rules can be **dangerous**!

نعم يا أمي، عدم اتباع القواعد قد يكون خطرًا!

Mother : And in an **emergency**, you must stay calm and call me.

وفي حالة الطوارئ، يجب أن تبقى هادئًا وتتصل بي.



● Fill in the blanks using words from the box.

املأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات في المربع.

dangerous – hurt – emergency – rules – careful – safe

1. We follow the to keep everyone safe at home.
2. Leaving toys on the floor is
3. If you are not, you might get
4. My parents teach me how to stay at school and at home.
5. In an, you should stay calm and ask for help.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Safety at Home السلامة في المنزل

Ali was reading a book in his room. When he finished, he left the book on the floor. His mother said, "Don't leave the book here. Someone may fall!" Ali listened to his mother and put the book back on the shelf.



He followed the rules and was careful at home.

كان علي يقرأ كتاباً في غرفته. عندما انتهى، ترك الكتاب على الأرض. قالت أمه: «لا تترك الكتاب هنا، قد يقع أحداً!» استمع علي إلى أمه ووضع الكتاب في الرف. لقد اتبع القواعد وكان حذراً في البيت.

Moral

Always follow safety rules at home to keep everyone safe.

دائماً اتبع قواعد السلامة في المنزل للحفاظ على سلامة الجميع.

Practice On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- If you aren't careful, you might get
a) hurt b) long c) happy
- Always follow rules at home.
a) cooking b) safety c) road
- Always be when you play.
a) lazy b) sad c) careful
- I like books.
a) playing b) reading c) eating
- I put my toys in the
a) bag b) bed c) box

Language in use

Imperatives

صيغة الأمر

Imperatives are short instructions used to tell someone **what to do or not to do**.
صيغة الأمر هي تعليمات قصيرة تُستخدم لإخبار شخص ما بما يجب فعله أو عدم فعله.

Usage

الاستخدام

We use **imperatives** to give safety rules or warnings.

نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء قواعد السلامة أو التحذيرات.

Form التكوين

Positive الإثبات

inf. (باقي الجملة) + (مصدر الفعل)

- Stop!



- Be careful!



Negative النفي

Don't + inf. (باقي الجملة) + (مصدر الفعل)

- Don't touch!



- Don't run!



NOTE

The **exclamation point (!)** at the end because they are strong instructions.

علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية الجملة لأن الأوامر قوية.

Practice On Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. run inside the house!
a) Don't b) Doesn't c) Didn't
2. to bed early!
a) Goes b) Go c) Going
3. Don't on the chair!
a) jumps b) jumping c) jump
4. careful when you play!
a) Be b) Being c) Been
5. run in the classroom!
a) Didn't b) Don't c) Doesn't
6. your homework regularly!
a) Does b) Did c) Do
7. Don't the fire! It's dangerous.
a) touch b) touches c) touched
8. carefully to your teacher!
a) Listens b) Listen c) Listened
9. eat fast food every day!
a) Don't b) Doesn't c) Isn't
10. kind to your friends!
a) Is b) Be c) Are

2 Correct the underlined words. صحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. Don't eating in my library! (.....)
2. Keeping your classroom clean! (.....)
3. Doesn't shout! (.....)
4. Don't crossing the street when the light is red! (.....)

Trace and write.

dangerous



dangerous

emergency



emergency

careful



careful

rules



rules

hurt



hurt

safe



safe

1 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة.

1 e s l r u



2 r h t u



3 n u d e s g a o r



2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

hurt - toys - careful

Mother : Ali, we have rules at home to keep us safe.

Ali : Yes, Mom. If I follow the rules, I will not get

1).....

Mother : Always be 2)..... when you play.

Ali : I put my toys in the box so no one falls.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We must follow rules at home.

a) safety

b) school

c) day

2. I put the book back on the

a) door

b) window

c) shelf

3. In an, stay calm and ask for help.

a) emergency

b) umbrella

c) home

4. run in the library!

a) Doesn't

b) Don't

c) Didn't

5. careful when you play.
 a) Be b) Is c) Being
6. shouting!
 a) Stopped b) Stop c) Stops

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. teach - Parents - me - safe - to stay - .

2. book - Don't - here - leave - the - .

5 Read and answer the following questions. اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

Ali was reading a book in his room. When he finished, he left the book on the floor. His mother said, "Don't leave the book here. Someone may fall!" Ali listened to his mother and put the book back on the shelf. He followed the rules and was careful at home.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Ali left the book on the
 a) desk b) floor c) bed
2. His advised him to put the book on the shelf.
 a) mother b) father c) brother

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What was Ali doing in his room?
4. Did Ali follow the rules at home?

6 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Safety at home

rules - careful - toys

Lesson

2

Safety in the Street

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.



street

شارع



cross

يعبر



stop

يتوقف



wait

ينتظر



walk

يمشي



helmet

خوذة



signs

علامات / لافتات



stranger

شخص غريب

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

should

يجب / ينبغي

left

يسار / شمال

safely

بأمان

right

يمين

green light

الإشارة الخضراء

slowly

ببطء

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look both ways

ينظر في كلا الاتجاهين

turn on

يضئ

ride my bike

أركب دراجتي

Well done!

أحسن! / أحسنت!

at the corner

عند الزاوية (الناصية)

cross the street

يعبر الشارع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
cross يعبر	crossed
wait ينتظر	waited
walk يمشي	walked
protect يحمي	protected
smile يبتسم	smiled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
wear يرتدي	wore
ride يركب	rode
tell يخبر	told
stand يقف	stood
run يجري	ran

Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Mona : What should I do before I cross the **street**?
ماذا يجب أن أفعل قبل أن أعبُر الشارع؟

Dad : You should always look both ways before you cross the street.
يجب عليك دائمًا أن تنظري في كلا الاتجاهين قبل أن تعبري الشارع.

Mona : Do I need to wear something when I ride my bike?
هل أحتاج أن أرتدي شيئًا عندما أركب دراجتي؟

Dad : Yes! Always wear a **helmet** to protect your head.
نعم! ارتدي دائمًا خوذة لحماية رأسك.

Mona : How do I know where to **walk** safely?
كيف أعرف أين أمشي بأمان؟

Dad : Follow the **signs**.
اتبعي اللافتات / العلامات.

Mona : What if someone I don't know talks to me?
وماذا لو كلمني شخص لا أعرفه؟

Dad : Don't talk to **strangers**. Always stay safe!
لا تتحدثي إلى الغرباء. ابقِي دائمًا في أمان!



Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Crossing the Street Safely

عبور الشارع بأمان

Sama stood at the corner of the street. She saw the big red stop sign. Her father said:

“Stop! Wait for the green light before you cross.”

Sama looked left and right. She saw cars waiting.

She waited carefully and did not walk on the street.

When the green light turned on, her father said,

“Now, it is safe. You can cross the street.”

Sama walked slowly and looked both ways. She crossed the street safely. Her father smiled and said, “Well done, Sama! You followed the safety rules.”



وقفت سما على ناصية الشارع. رأت لافتة التوقف الحمراء الكبيرة. قال لها والدها: «توقفي! انتظري الضوء الأخضر قبل أن تعبري.» نظرت سما إلى اليسار ثم إلى اليمين. رأت السيارات تنتظر. فانتظرت بحذر ولم تمش في الشارع. عندما أضاء الضوء الأخضر، قال والدها: «الآن، الوضع آمن. يمكنك عبور الشارع.» سارت سما ببطء ونظرت في كلا الاتجاهين. عبرت الشارع بأمان ابتسم والدها وقال: «أحسنيت يا سما! لقد اتبعت قواعد السلامة.»

Moral

Always follow safety rules – waiting and watching keep you safe!

دائماً اتبع قواعد السلامة – الانتظار والمراقبة يحافظان على سلامتك!

Write (T) for true and (F) for false.

1. Sama crossed the street when the light was red. ()
2. Sama looked both ways before crossing. ()
3. Sama ran across the street. ()
4. Sama's father told her to wait. ()

Look, read and role-play.

انظر واقرأ ومثل.

A: Stop! Don't run on the street.

توقف! لا تركض في الشارع.

B: Wait for the green light.

انتظر الضوء الأخضر.

**A:** Be careful! Don't touch the knife.

كن حذرًا! لا تلمس السكين.

**B:** Wear your helmet when you ride your bike.

ارتدِ خوذةك عندما تركب دراجتك.

Practice On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I can my bike.
a) ride b) drive c) fly
- Wait for the light before you cross.
a) yellow b) green c) red
- Always wear a to protect your head.
a) hat b) cup c) helmet
- Don't talk to
a) strangers b) teachers c) doctors
- We must follow safety
a) books b) rules c) pens



Phonics Focus

Consonant Blends /sl/ /st/ /gr/ /tr/

A **consonant blend** is when two or more consonants are joined together, and you can still hear each sound.

مزج الحروف الساكنة هو عندما يتم ضم حرفين ساكنين أو أكثر معاً، مع استمرار سماع كل صوت.

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

/sl/

Say **/s/ + /l/** quickly: **(sl)**

انطق الصوت **/s/** و **/l/** بسرعة: **(sl)**

slide

زحليقة

slip

ينزلق

slow

بطيء

sleep

ينام

/st/

Say **/s/ + /t/** quickly: **(st)**

انطق الصوت **/s/** و **/t/** بسرعة: **(st)**

star

نجم

stone

حجر

stop

يتوقف

stand

يقف

step

خطوة

/gr/

Say **/g/ + /r/** quickly: **(gr)**

انطق الصوت **/g/** و **/r/** بسرعة: **(gr)**

green

أخضر

grass

عُشب

grow

ينمو

grab

يمسك

/tr/

Say **/t/ + /r/** quickly: **(tr)**

انطق الصوت **/t/** و **/r/** بسرعة: **(tr)**

tree

شجرة

truck

شاحنة

train

قطار

trap

مصيدة / فخ

trip

رحلة

Practice On Phonics

1 Fill in the missing letters.

أكمل الحروف الناقصة.

1 _top

2 t__p

3 s_ide

4 t_uck

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 s r
g
a s



.....

2 i r t
a n



.....

3 d t
n
s a



.....

4 e l
s
p e



.....

5 e t
r e



.....

6 e t
o
s n



.....

3 Circle the odd sound out:

حوّط الصوت المختلف

- | | | | | |
|----------|---|-------|---|-------|
| 1. slide | - | step | - | sleep |
| 2. tree | - | train | - | grab |
| 3. grass | - | star | - | stand |

4 Read and complete with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

stop - slip - steps

- Be careful! You might on the ice.
- Watch your when you go down the stairs.
- When the light turns red, you must

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

street



street

cross



cross

stop



stop

wait



wait

walk



walk

helmet



helmet

signs



signs

stranger



stranger

Activities

On Lesson 2

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

1 t_ee

2 s_ow

3 g_ass

4 _leep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Look both ways before you the street.

a) cross

b) play

c) sleep

2. When you ride a bike, wear a

a) cap

b) helmet

c) shirt

3. Stop! Don't on the street.

a) eat

b) wash

c) run

4. If something falls, try to it carefully.

a) slip

b) grab

c) grow

5. Wait for the light, then cross.

a) red

b) yellow

c) green

6. Watch out! That net is a

a) trap

b) slide

c) tree

7. Follow the to walk safely.

a) drawings

b) signs

c) stones

8. Always follow the rules to be safe.

a) safety

b) room

c) danger

9. The sky is full of

a) seas

b) stars

c) trees

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

stop - yellow - green

When you cross the street, you should look both ways.

When the light is red, you should 1)..... . Wait for the 2)..... light before you cross. Don't run on the street!

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوين كلمة.

1

o r
s
c s



.....

2

c t
k
r u



.....

3

k w
a l



.....

5 Read and answer the following questions. اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

Sama stood at the corner of the street. She saw the big red stop sign. Her father said, "Stop! Wait for the green light before you cross". She looked both ways and didn't run on the street. She crossed the street safely.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Sama saw the big stop sign.
a) red b) blue c) green
- Sama crossed the street
a) quickly b) fast c) safely

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where did Sama stand?
- What did she do before crossing?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. talk - Don't - strangers - to - .

.....

2. for - the - Wait - light - green - .

.....

3. crossed - safely - She - the street - .

.....

4. wear - Do - need - I - to - a helmet - ?

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. don't touch the knife

.....

2. how do you go to school

.....

8 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Safety in the street

cross - stop - look - run

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



policeman
رجل شرطة



seat belt
حزام الأمان



ambulance
سيارة إسعاف



first aid
إسعافات أولية

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

sick	مريض	scared	خائف
hospital	مستشفى	quickly	بسرعة
injured	مصاب	kitchen	مطبخ
smoke	دخان	stove	بوتاجاز
parents	الوالدان	adult	شخص بالغ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
call يتصل	called
turn off يطفى - يطفى	turned off
protect يحمي	protected
check يفحص	checked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
keep يحافظ على	kept
take يأخذ	took
feel يشعر	felt
come يأتي	came

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

call **for** help

يتصل طلبًا للمساعدة

came right away

أتت (في الحال / على الفور)

stay calm

يبقى هادئًا

brush your teeth

أغسل أسنانك بالفرشاة

do your homework

قم بعمل واجبك

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.

The **policeman** keeps us safe.

الشرطي يحافظ على سلامتنا.



Wear the **seat belt** in the car.

اربط حزام الأمان في السيارة.

The **ambulance** takes sick people to the hospital.

تنقل سيارة الإسعاف المرضى إلى المستشفى.



First aid helps injured people.

الإسعافات الأولية تساعد المصابين.

Read the Story:

اقرأ القصة.

Help is Here!

المساعدة وصلت!



Lina was in the kitchen when she saw some smoke near the stove. She felt a little scared but remembered the safety rule:

“You must call an adult if something doesn't seem right.”

Lina quickly called her mother from the other room and said, **“Mom, there's smoke in the kitchen!”** Her mother came right away and turned off the stove. She checked everything and made sure it was safe. Lina stayed calm and didn't go near the stove. Her mother smiled and said, **“Good job, Lina! You did the right thing.”**

كانت لينا في المطبخ عندما رأت دخاناً بالقرب من البوتجاز. شعرت بالخوف قليلاً، لكنها تذكّرت قاعدة السلامة: «يجب أن تتصل بشخص بالغ إذا كان هناك شيء غير طبيعي..» اتصلت لينا بسرعة على والدتها من الغرفة الأخرى وقالت: «أمي، هناك دخان في المطبخ!» جاءت والدتها على الفور وأطفأت البوتجاز. فحصت كل شيء وتأكدت أن الوضع آمن. بقيت لينا هادئة ولم تقترب من البوتجاز. ابتسمت والدتها وقالت: «عمل رائع يا لينا! لقد تصرفتي بشكل صحيح.»

Moral

Stay calm in an emergency, and ask for help when needed.

ابق هادئاً في حالات الطوارئ، واطلب المساعدة عند الحاجة.

Read and answer:

1. Where was Lina when she saw smoke?

2. What did Lina do when she saw the smoke?

3. Who did Lina call for help?

4. What did Lina's mother do?

Talking about safety rules

الحديث عن قواعد السلامة



What should you do if there is an emergency?

ماذا يجب أن تفعل إذا كان هناك حالة طارئة؟

I should call for help and stay safe.

يجب أن أطلب المساعدة وأبقى في أمان.



Who can you call for help?

من يمكنك أن تتصل به لطلب المساعدة؟

I can call my parents or the emergency number 122.

يمكنني أن أتصل بوالدي أو برقم الطوارئ 122.



Practice On Vocabulary

1 Read and match.

اقرأ وامل.

1. seat belt

a. takes sick people to the hospital

2. ambulance

b. keeps us safe

3. policeman

c. protects us in the car

4. first aid

d. helps the injured

1. ()

2. ()

3. ()

4. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. The keeps us safe.
a) teacher b) policeman c) nurse
2. You must wear the in the car.
a) seat belt b) hat c) cap
3. helps injured people.
a) Smoke b) First aid c) Policeman
4. The takes sick people to the hospital.
a) car b) bus c) ambulance
5. Lina saw some near the stove.
a) smoke b) animals c) birds
6. She her mother for help.
a) stayed b) called c) kept
7. If there is an emergency, call
a) 111 b) 133 c) 122
8. She felt a little when she saw the lion.
a) happy b) scared c) sad
9. Lina calm and didn't go near the stove.
a) stayed b) made c) played
10. Stay calm in an and ask for help.
a) energy b) emergency c) room
11. You must call an if something doesn't seem right.
a) adult b) baby c) umbrella
12. There is a in the kitchen.
a) bed b) stove c) board

Language in use

Modals for Rules

الأفعال الناقصة للقواعد



We use “**must**” and “**mustn’t**” to talk about rules. They tell us what we must do and what we cannot do.

نستخدم (must) و (mustn't) للحديث عن القواعد فهي تخبرنا بما يجب علينا فعله وما لا يمكننا فعله.

must يجب

Subject الفاعل + must + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

We use “**must**” to say something is very important or necessary.

نستخدم (must) لنقول أن شيئاً ما مهم جداً أو ضروري.

- You **must** call for help in an emergency.
- You **must** wear a helmet when riding a bike.
- You **must** follow the rules to stay safe.

mustn't يجب ألا

Subject الفاعل + mustn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

We use “**mustn't**” to say something is not allowed.

نستخدم (mustn't) لنقول أن شيئاً ما غير مسموح به.

- You **mustn't** talk to strangers.
- You **mustn't** run in the street.
- You **mustn't** leave anything on the floor.

Practice On Language

1 Choose the correct word. SB

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. You (must / mustn't) brush your teeth every day.
2. You (must / mustn't) eat too much candy.
3. You (must / mustn't) do your homework.
4. You (must / mustn't) leave your toys on the floor.
5. You (must / mustn't) wash your hands before eating.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You must kind to your friends.
a) is b) are c) be
2. You run in the library.
a) must b) mustn't c) should
3. You mustn't hot things.
a) touch b) touched c) touching
4. If there is an emergency, you call 122.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) must
5. You listen to your teacher.
a) must b) mustn't c) can't

3 Correct the underlined words.

صحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. You must run in the street. (.....)
2. You must waiting for the green light before crossing. (.....)
3. You must shout in the library. (.....)
4. You must eats healthy food. (.....)
5. You mustn't follow the safety rules. (.....)

Trace and write.

policeman



policeman

seat belt



seat belt

ambulance



ambulance

first aid



first aid

hospital



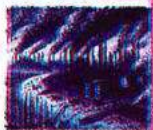
hospital

stove



stove

smoke



smoke

scared



scared

turn off



turn off

Activities

On Lesson

3

1 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1

c	i	o
p	n	m
e	a	l



.....

2

i	f	a
s	d	t
i		r



.....

3

t	t	s
e	l	b
e		a



.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- You must wear a to protect you in the car.
a) belt b) seat belt c) shirt
- I my teeth every day.
a) brush b) make c) do
- Mom is cooking in the
a) bedroom b) kitchen c) living room
- You eat fruit and vegetables.
a) must b) mustn't c) can't
- You touch hot things.
a) must b) mustn't c) are
- You mustn't to strangers.
a) talk b) talks c) talking
- You do your homework.
a) must b) mustn't c) can't
- You run in the library.
a) must b) mustn't c) can

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

help - food - parents

Ali : What should you do if there is an emergency?

Sara: I should call for 1)..... and stay safe.

Ali : Who can you call for help?

Sara: I can call my 2).....

4 Read and answer the following questions. اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

Lina was in the kitchen when she saw smoke near the stove. She felt a little scared. She called her mother for help. Her mother came quickly and turned off the stove. Lina stayed calm and she was safe.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Lina saw near the stove.

a) smoke

b) water

c) money

2. Her came quickly.

a) father

b) mother

c) brother

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where was Lina?

.....

4. How did she feel?

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. keeps - The policeman - safe - us - .

2. strangers - mustn't - You - talk to - .

3. the seat - Wear - belt - the car - in - .

4. protects - A helmet - heads - our - .

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. where do you live

2. you must be kind

7 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Safety rules

emergency - helmet - strangers

Lesson

4

My Safety Guide

Vocabulary كلمات

guide	دليل / مرشد	park	حديقة
friend	صديق	near	قريب
house	منزل	sign	لافتة
nod	يومي برأسه	before	قبل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
walk يمشي	walked	go يذهب	went
nod يومي برأسه	noded	leave يغادر	left
smile يبتسم	smiled	see يرى	saw

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go outside	يخرج
Safety comes first.	السلامة أولاً.
Watch out!	احتس!
Be careful!	كن حذراً!

Read the story.

اقرأ القصة.

Let's Stay Safe

هيا بنا نحافظ على سلامتنا

Tia and Sally are friends. One day, they went outside to play.

Before they left the house, Tia said, "Remember, safety comes first."

You must wear your helmet when you ride your bike."

Sally **noded** and said, "Yes, and you mustn't talk to strangers.

If there is an emergency, you must call for help."

As they walked to the park, Sally saw a stop sign. She said,

"Stop! Wait for the green light before you cross the street."

Tia looked both ways and said, "Be careful! Don't run near the

street." Tia smiled, "This is our safety guide. We must always follow these rules to stay safe."



تيا وسالي صديقتان. في يوم من الأيام خرجتا للعب في الخارج. قبل أن تغادرا المنزل، قالت تيا: «تذكّري، السلامة أولاً. يجب أن ترتدي خوذة عندما تركبين الدراجة.» أومأت سالي برأسها وقالت: «نعم، ويجب ألا تتحدثي مع الغرباء. وإذا حدثت حالة طارئة، يجب أن تطليبي المساعدة.» وأثناء سيرهما إلى الحديقة، رأت سالي إشارة توقف. فقالت: «توقفي! انتظري الضوء الأخضر قبل أن تعبري الشارع.» نظرت تيا في الاتجاهين وقالت: «كوني حذرة! لا تجري بالقرب من الشارع.» ثم ابتسمت تيا وقالت: «هذا هو دليل السلامة الخاص بنا. يجب أن نتبع هذه القواعد دائماً لنظل في أمان.»

Write (T) for true and (F) for false.

1. Tia said, "You must wear your helmet." ()
2. Sally talked to strangers. ()
3. Sally said, "Stop! Wait for the green light." ()
4. Tia ran near the street. ()

Writing

Punctuation علامات الترقيم

Exclamation point (!)

علامة التعجب

Use

We use **The exclamation point** نستخدم علامة التعجب ...

- 1 After instructions that are very important.

بعد الأوامر الهامة للغاية.

- Stop!



- Don't run!



- 2 To show strong feelings like surprise, excitement, or warning.

لبيان المشاعر القوية مثل الدهشة أو الحماسة أو التحذير.

- Be careful!

- Watch out!



- That's amazing!



- Oh no!

- Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. hurry up
2. don't touch the fire
3. that's delicious
4. wow It's nice.
5. be careful
6. don't shout

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

guide

guide

safety

safety

nod

nod

friend

friend

sign

sign

Be careful

Be careful

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Stop and wait for the light before crossing.
a) green b) red c) white
2. Safety comes
a) second b) first c) last
3. Don't to strangers.
a) play b) meet c) talk
4. You must call for in an emergency.
a) help b) food c) run
5. When you ride a bike, you must wear a
a) belt b) helmet c) cap
6. You mustn't run the street.
a) under b) next c) near
7. We went to the to play.
a) park b) school c) kitchen
8. We must follow the to stay safe.
a) roads b) rules c) lights
9. Sally and said, "Yes."
a) nodded b) followed c) went
10. Sara and Laila are
a) books b) signs c) friends

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. **SB**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. wear - must - helmet - You - a - .

2. call - help - must - for - You - .

3. mustn't - run - You - near - street - the - .

4. wait - must - light - for - You - green - the - .

5. mustn't - talk - strangers - to - You - .

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1. You must call

a. near the street.

2. To stay safe,

b. for help.

3. Don't run

c. follow the rules.

4 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. it is sunny today

2. i like pizza

3. watch out

4. that's amazing

5 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

How to stay safe

green - emergency - run

Review On Unit

7

Vocabulary

Lesson (1)

dangerous	خطير
emergency	حالة طوارئ
rules	قواعد
careful	حريص
hurt	يؤذي
safe	آمن

Lesson (2)

policeman	رجل شرطة
seat belt	حزام أمان
ambulance	سيارة إسعاف
first aid	إسعافات أولية
kitchen	مطبخ
smoke	دخان

Lesson (3)

street	شارع
cross	يعبر
stop	يقف
wait	ينتظر
walk	يمشي
helmet	خوذة
signs	لافتات

Lesson (4)

friends	أصدقاء
park	حديقة
nod	يومي برأسه
guide	مرشد - دليل
near	قريب
before	قبل
house	منزل

Phonics

/s/

slide

slow

/gr/

green

grow

/st/

star

step

/tr/

tree

truck

Language Imperatives

Positive: - Stop!

Negative: - Don't run!

Modals for rules

- You **must** call for help.

- You **mustn't** talk to strangers.

Writing Corner

- Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Safety at home

We follow the rules at home to keep us safe. Always be careful when you play. Put your toys in the box so no one falls.

Safety in the street

You must wait for the green light before crossing. You should wear a helmet when you ride your bike. Don't talk to strangers.

Staying safe everywhere

The policeman keeps us safe. Wear the seat belt in the car. First aid helps injured people.

How to stay safe

You must wait for the green light before you cross. You must call for help in an emergency. You mustn't run near the street.

Dictation On Unit

7

Lesson (1)	dangerous	قواعد
	emergency	حريص
	calm	يؤذي
	keep safe	ألعاب

Lesson (2)	cross	علامات / لافتات
	wait	خوذة
	strangers	يرتدي
	walk	يحمي

Lesson (3)	injured	رجل شرطة
	hospital	إسعافات أولية
	smoke	حزام الأمان
	scared	سيارة إسعاف

Lesson (4)	park	دليل
	outside	السلامة
	follow	أصدقاء
	walk	يومئ برأسه

Test Based On Unit

1

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

- 1 s_ide 2 _rain 3 s_ar 4 _row

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The keeps us safe.
a) first aid b) policeman c) teacher
- If you aren't careful, you might get
a) hurt b) happy c) rules
- You must follow rules.
a) running b) safety c) signs
- shout in the library!
a) Doesn't b) Didn't c) Don't
- You talk to strangers.
a) must b) mustn't c) should
- careful on the road!
a) Be b) Being c) Are

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

stay - helmet - emergency

When you go outside to play, remember that safety comes first. You must wear a 1) when you ride your bike. In an 2), you must call for help.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1

e h
t e
l m



2

r h
u t



3

o s
v
t e



5 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Amal stood at the corner of the street. She waited for the green light before she crossed. When it turned green. She looked both ways and crossed safely. Her father smiled and said, "Well done, Amal! You followed the safety rules."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Amal was at the of the street.
 a) corner b) left c) right
2. Amal looked both before crossing.
 a) hands b) ways c) days

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Amal wait for?
4. Why did her father smile?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. wear - must - helmet - You - a - .

2. talk - Don't - strangers - to - .

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. watch out
2. don't shout

.....

.....

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Safety rules

emergency - wait - seat belt

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We have at home.
a) rules b) pens c) trees
2. They keep us
a) sad b) safe c) hurt
3. I put my in the box.
a) books b) bags c) toys

2 Fill in the missing letters.

أكمل الحروف الناقصة.

- 1 s_ide 2 t_ain 3 st_p 4 gre_n

3 Fill in the missing letters.

أكمل الحروف الناقصة.

- 1 s_reet 2 t_uck 3 hel_et 4 sm_ke

Unit 2

Food and Health

الطعام والصحة



Learning Outcomes

Speaking	Use common basic vocabulary related to food and health. يستخدم مفردات أساسية شائعة تتعلق بالطعام والصحة. Answer simple questions about food preferences and healthy habits in oral discussion. يجيب عن أسئلة بسيطة حول تفضيلات الطعام والعادات الصحية في مناقشة شفوية. Use new vocabulary to describe healthy/unhealthy foods in oral context. يستخدم مفردات جديدة لوصف الأطعمة الصحية وغير الصحية في سياق شفهي. Use reflexive pronouns in spoken sentences accurately. يستخدم الضمائر الانعكاسية في الجمل المنطوقة بدقة.
Reading	Recognize basic vocabulary related to food, health, and hygiene. يتعرف على المفردات الأساسية المتعلقة بالطعام والصحة والنظافة. Answer simple comprehension questions about food, health, and hygiene. يجيب عن أسئلة فهم بسيطة حول الطعام والصحة والنظافة. Identify healthy and unhealthy foods in short written texts. يُميز بين الأطعمة الصحية وغير الصحية في نصوص قصيرة مكتوبة.
Listening	Show understanding of short stories and conversations about food, health, and hygiene when listened to. يُظهر فهماً قصص القصيرة والمحادثات حول الطعام والصحة والنظافة عند الاستماع إليها. Recognize vocabulary words related to food, health, and hygiene in listening activities. يتعرف على الكلمات المتعلقة بالطعام والصحة والنظافة في أنشطة الاستماع.
Writing	Follow simple instructions related to healthy habits. يتبع تعليمات بسيطة تتعلق بالعادات الصحية. Write short, correct sentences with food, health, and hygiene vocabulary. يكتب جملًا قصيرة وصحيحة تحتوي على مفردات عن الطعام والصحة والنظافة. Write short paragraphs describing meals, healthy habits, and personal preferences. يكتب فقرات قصيرة تصف الوجبات والعادات الصحية والتفضيلات الشخصية. Use reflexive pronouns correctly in writing. يستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بشكل صحيح في الكتابة.

Lesson

1

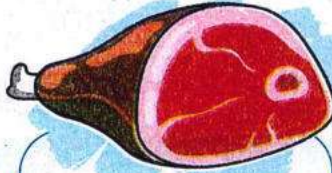
Food for Energy

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



food

طعام



meat

لحم



sugar

سكر



fruits

فاكهة



water

ماء



vegetables

خضروات

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

energy	طاقة	hungry	جائع
protein	بروتين	hydrated	رطب
vitamins	فيتامينات	breakfast	إفطار
sickness	مرض	lunch	غداء
kinds	أنواع	slowly	ببطء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
wash يغسل	washed	enjoy يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
dress يرتدي	dressed	work يعمل	worked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
give يعطي - يمنح	gave	fight يكافح	fought
eat يأكل	ate	drink يشرب	drank
grow ينمو	grew	wake up يستيقظ	woke up

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

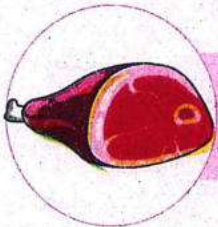
good for مفيد لـ	bad for ضار لـ
make us strong يجعلنا أقوياء	too much أكثر من اللازم
work well يعمل بشكل جيد	make a salad يحضر طبق سلطة
a glass of milk كوب من الحليب	give us energy يمدنا بالطاقة

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.

Food gives us energy.

الطعام يمنحنا الطاقة.



Meat gives us protein.

اللحوم تعطينا البروتين.

Too much **sugar** is bad for your body.

الكثير من السكر ضار بجسمك.

I eat **fruits** every day.

أنا أكل الفاكهة كل يوم.



Water keeps us healthy.

الماء يحافظ على صحتنا.

We must eat vegetables.

يجب أن نأكل الخضروات.



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Food gives us energy to play, learn, and grow. Different foods give us different kinds of energy. **Meat** gives our body protein to make us strong. **Fruits** and **vegetables** give us vitamins to keep us healthy. They also help us fight sickness. **Sugar** gives us quick energy, but too much sugar is not good for our health. **Water** is very important because it helps our body work well. When we eat the right **food** and drink enough water, we have good energy every day.

يُعطينا الطعام الطاقة للعب والتعلم والنمو. الأطعمة المختلفة تُعطينا أنواعًا مختلفة من الطاقة. اللحم يمنح أجسامنا البروتين ليُجعلنا أقوياء. الفواكه والخضروات تُعطينا الفيتامينات لتُبقي أجسامنا صحيّة، كما أنها تساعدنا على مقاومة المرض. السكر يُعطينا طاقة سريعة، ولكن تناول الكثير منه ليس جيدًا لصحتنا. الماء مهم جدًا لأنه يساعد أجسامنا على العمل بشكل جيد. عندما نأكل الطعام المناسب ونشرب كمية كافية من الماء، نحصل على طاقة جيدة كل يوم.

Read again, then write (T) for true or (F) for false.

1. Water helps our body work well. ()
2. Too much sugar is good for your body. ()
3. Vegetables give us protein. ()
4. Fruits give us vitamins. ()
5. Food gives us energy. ()

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Seleem wakes up early. He washes himself and smiles. "I am hungry," he says. Saleem eats fruit and vegetables for breakfast. He drinks water to stay hydrated. Later, Saleem plays football with his friends. He runs fast and feels strong. At lunch, he eats meat and rice. Saleem says to himself, "I have so much



energy!" His sister Leila wakes up and dresses herself. She tells herself to eat slowly. She enjoys bread and cheese with a glass of milk. Their friend Omar makes a salad for himself.

يستيقظ سليم مبكرًا. يغتسل ويتسم. يقول: «أنا جائع». يأكل سليم الفاكهة والخضروات في الإفطار، ويشرب الماء ليبقى رطبًا. لاحقًا، يلعب سليم كرة القدم مع أصدقائه. يركض بسرعة ويشعر بالقوة. في الغداء، يأكل اللحم مع الأرز. يقول سليم لنفسه: «لدي طاقة كبيرة!» تستيقظ أخته ليلى وترتدي ملابسها بنفسها. تقول لنفسها أن تأكل ببطء. تستمتع ليلى بالخبز والجبن مع كوب من الحليب. أما صديقهما عمر، فيحضر سلطة لنفسه.

Moral

Eat healthy food and drink water to have energy for the day.

كل طعامًا صحيًا واشرب الماء لتحصل على طاقة ليومك.

Test Yourself

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Seleem up early.
a) wakes b) goes c) sleeps
- At, he eats meat and rice.
a) breakfast b) noon c) lunch
- food gives us energy for the day.
a) Healthy b) Unhealthy c) Bad

Language in use

Reflexive Pronouns

الضمائر المنعكسة

- We use "**reflexive pronouns**" when the subject and the object are the same person.

نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون الفاعل والمفعول نفس الشخص.

Subject + v + object

He dresses himself.

- Or when you do something **yourself**.

أو عندما تقوم بعمل شيء ما بنفسك (أي بدون مساعدة).

e.g. I did the homework by **myself**.

For singular

للمفرد

Subject Pronouns	Reflexive Pronouns	
I	myself	بنفسي
You	yourself	بنفسك
He - Ali	himself	بنفسه
She - Sara	herself	بنفسها
It - cat	itself	بنفسه (لغير العاقل)

Examples:

I can make a sandwich by **myself**.

You can wash **yourself**.

He dresses **himself**.

She looks at **herself** in the mirror.

The cat / It cleans **itself**.

For plural

للجمع

Subject Pronouns	Reflexive Pronouns
You	yourselves بأنفسكم
We	ourselves بأنفسنا
They - Boys	themselves بأنفسهم

Examples:Take care of **yourselves**, girls.**We** built the tent **ourselves**.The kids made a salad **themselves**.

لاحظ: إذا بدأت الجملة بفعل أمر، نستخدم الضمير **yourself** أو **yourselves**.

- Help **yourself**, Ali.

(للمفرد)

- Behave **yourselves**, boys.

(للجمع)

Practice On Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Mom made lunch by
 a) myself b) himself c) herself
- We enjoyed at the park.
 a) ourselves b) itself c) yourselves
- I can wash
 a) himself b) myself c) herself
- Ahmed made a salad
 a) yourself b) itself c) himself
- Enjoy , boys.
 a) myself b) yourselves c) himself

6. They cook dinner by
 a) themselves b) himself c) yourselves
7. The dog ate the fish by
 a) herself b) itself c) myself
8. You can look at in the mirror.
 a) yourself b) herself c) itself
9. The children can dress
 a) ourselves b) themselves c) yourself
10. Take care of , Sara.
 a) yourself b) herself c) myself
11. Sara and Mona built the tent
 a) herself b) yourself c) themselves
12. I go to school by
 a) myself b) himself c) itself

2 Correct the underlined words.

صحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. She taught himself to play the guitar. (.....)
2. I do my homework by yourself. (.....)
3. Dad drives the car myself. (.....)
4. Ali and I go to school by themselves. (.....)
5. My little sister can dress she. (.....)
6. You can hurt myself with the knife. (.....)
7. Do the homework himself. (.....)
8. I can wash yourself. (.....)
9. It can clean himself. (.....)

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

meat 

meat

food 

food

sugar 

sugar

fruits 

fruits

water 

water

vegetables 

vegetables

1 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1

d o

f o



.....

2

a m

e t



.....

3

r w

e t a



.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We get from food.
 - a) air
 - b) energy
 - c) water
2. Fruits and vegetables gives us
 - a) protein
 - b) fats
 - c) vitamins
3. gives us quick energy.
 - a) Sugar
 - b) Fruit
 - c) Meat
4. Vitamins help us fight
 - a) water
 - b) sickness
 - c) energy
5. helps our body work well.
 - a) Water
 - b) Meat
 - c) Sugar
6. We get from meat.
 - a) vitamins
 - b) oil
 - c) protein
7. Protein makes us
 - a) strong
 - b) weak
 - c) sick
8. I up early.
 - a) take
 - b) wake
 - c) play
9. At, I eat meat and rice.
 - a) lunch
 - b) breakfast
 - c) dinner

10. I football with my friends.
a) put b) drink c) play
11. I made this cake by
a) myself b) himself c) yourself
12. We enjoyed on the beach.
a) themselves b) ourselves c) herself
13. You can hurt with the knife.
a) yourself b) myself c) itself
14. Help , girls.
a) yourself b) themselves c) yourselves
15. She told to eat slowly.
a) himself b) herself c) myself

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

myself - himself - water

Ali wakes up early. He washes 1) and has breakfast. He eats fruit and eggs for breakfast. He drinks a lot of 2) to stay hydrated. He exercises and runs fast.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. vegetables - must - We - eat - .
.....

2. healthy - us - keeps - Water - .
.....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Food gives us energy to play, learn, and grow. Different foods give us different kinds of energy. Meat gives our body protein to make us strong. Fruits and vegetables give us vitamins to keep us healthy. They also help us fight sickness.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Food gives us
 a) energy b) water c) sickness
2. Fruits and vegetables give us
 a) protein b) sugar c) vitamins

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What gives our body protein?
4. How can vitamins help us?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. water is very important

.....

2. who helps you at home

.....

7 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:**Food for energy****energy - meat - fruits**

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson

2

Healthy and Unhealthy Food

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.

Healthy Food طعام صحي



milk

حليب



cheese

جبين



rice

أرز



nuts

مكسرات



eggs

بيض



bread

خبز



chicken

دجاج



fish

سمك

Unhealthy Food طعام غير صحي



sweets

حلوى



soda

صودا / مشروبات غازية



chips

رقائق البطاطس (شيبسي)



fries

بطاطس مقلية



cookies

كعك مُحلى - كوكيز



cake

كيك - كعك



pizza

بيتزا



lollipop

مصاصة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

bones	عظام	teeth	أسنان
calcium	كالسيوم	salt / salty	ملح - مالح
fats	دهون	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
carbohydrates	كربوهيدرات	oil	زيت
brain	مخ	candy	حلوى
source	مصدر	tasty	لذيذ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
help	يساعد helped	cook	يطبخ cooked
try	يجرب tried		

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
grow	ينمو grew	drink	يشرب drank
eat	يأكل ate	have	يتناول had

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

rich in	غني بـ	for breakfast / lunch	على الإفطار / الغداء
a glass of milk	كوب من الحليب	Yeah = Yes	نعم
What about you?	وماذا عنك؟	You're right.	أنت محق.
That sounds good!	هذا يبدو رائعاً!	stay strong	يبقى قوياً

Look, listen and repeat.

انظر واستمع وردد.

Healthy Food طعام صحي

Milk is good for our bones.

الحليب مفيد لعظامنا.



Cheese is rich in calcium.

الجبن غني بالكالسيوم.

Rice gives us energy.

الأرز يُعطينا الطاقة.



Nuts are a good source of fats.

المكسرات مصدر جيد للدهون.

Eggs are full of protein.

البيض مليء بالبروتين.



Bread is rich in carbohydrates.

الخبز غني بالكربوهيدرات.

Chicken is tasty and healthy.

الدجاج لذيذ وصحي.



Fish helps our brains grow.

السمك يساعد أدمغتنا على النمو.

Unhealthy Food طعام غير صحي

Sweets are bad for our teeth.

الحلوى ضارة بأسناننا.



Soda has too much sugar.

المشروبات الغازية تحتوي على الكثير من السكر.

Chips are salty snacks.

رقائق البطاطس وجبات خفيفة مالحة.



Fries are cooked in oil.

البطاطس المقلية تُطهى في الزيت.

Cookies are not healthy snacks.

الكوكيز وجبات خفيفة غير صحية.



Cake is not good for your body.

الكيك ليس جيدًا لجسمك.

Pizza has too much fat and salt.

البيتزا تحتوي على الكثير من الدهون والملح.



Lollipops are just sugar.

المصاصات مجرد سكر.

Read the dialog and act it out.

اقرأ الحوار وقم بتمثيله.

Maya : Good morning, Salma! What do you usually eat for breakfast?

صباح الخير يا سلمى! ماذا تأكلين عادة في الإفطار؟

Salma : I usually eat eggs and drink a glass of milk. They give me energy. What about you?

عادة أكل البيض وأشرب كوبًا من الحليب، فهما يُعطيني الطاقة. وماذا عنكِ؟

Maya : Hmm... I like cake and soda.

همم... أنا أحب الكعك والمشروبات الغازية.

Salma : Really? Cake and soda in the morning?

حقًا؟ كعك ومشروبات غازية في الصباح؟

Maya : Yes, but I know they aren't very healthy.

نعم، لكنني أعلم أنهما ليسا صحيين جدًا.

Salma : You're right. Eggs and milk are healthy, but cake and soda are not good for you.

معك حق. البيض والحليب صحيان، لكن الكعك والمشروبات الغازية ليسا جيدين لك.

Maya : True. So, what do you eat for lunch?

صحيح. إذًا، ماذا تأكلين على الغداء؟

Salma : I often eat chicken and nuts. They help me stay strong.

غالبًا أكل الدجاج والمكسرات، فهما يساعدانني على البقاء قوية.

Maya : That sounds good! I usually eat pizza and fries.

هذا يبدو رائعًا! أنا عادة أكل البيتزا والبطاطس المقلية.

Salma : Pizza and fries are tasty, but not healthy every day.

البيتزا والبطاطس المقلية لذيذتان، لكنهما ليستا صحيتين كل يوم.

Maya : Yeah, maybe I'll try chicken and nuts instead.

نعم، ربما سأجرب أكل الدجاج والمكسرات بدلًا منهما.



Practice On Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. is good for our bones.
a) Rice b) Milk c) Pizza
2. are cooked in oil.
a) Fries b) Sweets c) Nuts
3. Eggs are full of
a) sugar b) salt c) protein
4. are salty snacks.
a) Cheese b) Chips c) Cake
5. Fish helps our grow.
a) brains b) legs c) eyes
6. Cake and soda are not very
a) bad b) safe c) healthy
7. are healthy food.
a) Eggs b) Lollipops c) Chips
8. Bread is rich in
a) fats b) protein c) carbohydrates

2 Circle the odd one out.  ضع دائرة حول المختلف.

- | | | | | | | |
|------------|---|---------|---|-----------|---|---------|
| 1. milk | - | eggs | - | candy | - | nuts |
| 2. pizza | - | meat | - | fish | - | chicken |
| 3. soda | - | cookies | - | cake | - | fish |
| 4. chips | - | candy | - | nuts | - | soda |
| 5. chicken | - | fish | - | lollipops | - | eggs |



Phonics Focus

ea & ee /i:/ sound

Both "ea" and "ee" make the long /i:/ sound.

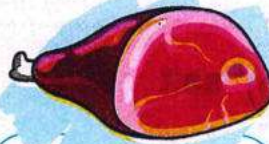
الحروف «ea» و «ee» يصدران الصوت /i:/ الممدود.

ea = /i:/ usually in the middle of the word.

تأتي عادةً في وسط الكلمة.



eat
ياكل



meat
لحمة



beans
فول

ee = /i:/ can usually be in the middle or at the end.

يمكن أن تأتي في وسط أو نهاية الكلمة.



cheese
جبنة



green
أخضر



sweet
حلى



tree
شجرة

Listen and circle the word with long /i:/

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تحتوي على صوت /i:/ الطويل.

- | | | |
|----------|---|--------|
| 1. eat | - | it |
| 2. chess | - | cheese |
| 3. meat | - | met |
| 4. bins | - | beans |

Trace and write.

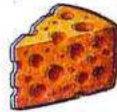
تتبع واكتب.

milk



milk

cheese



cheese

nuts



nuts

chicken



chicken

fish



fish

sweets



sweets

chips



chips

fries



fries

lollipops



lollipops

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 gr__ n

2 b__ ns

3 m__ t

4 sw__ t

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Cheese is rich in

a) energy b) protein c) calcium

2. Milk is good for our

a) hair b) eyes c) bones

3. Fries are cooked in

a) water b) oil c) soda

4. are bad for our teeth.

a) Sweets b) Eggs c) Nuts

5. Soda has too much

a) energy b) sugar c) salt

6. are a good source of fats.

a) Bread b) Fries c) Nuts

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

milk - unhealthy - eggs

Maya : Hello, Salma! What do you usually eat for breakfast?

Salma : I eat 1) and drink a glass of milk.

Maya : I like cake and soda.

Salma : But they are 2)

Maya : You're right.

4 Read and match.

اقرأ و صل.

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| 1) Nuts are | a) energy. |
| 2) Chips are | b) eat for lunch? |
| 3) What do you | c) salty snacks. |
| 4) Rice gives us | d) a good source of fats. |

5 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 d r a b e 	2 z p i a z 	3 i c s h p 
---	---	---

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. eat - and - | - chicken - nuts - .

2. full - Eggs - of - are - protein - .

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. chicken is healthy

2. what about you

8 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Healthy and unhealthy food

milk - rice - soda

Lesson

3

Staying Healthy

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.



exercise

يتمرن



wash my hands

أغسل يديّ



clean my room

أنظف غرفتي



stay in bed

يبقى في الفراش



rest

يرتاح



take medicine

يأخذ الدواء

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

sick	مريض	a little	قليلاً
before	قبل	strong	قوي
friend	صديق	weak	ضعيف
carefully	بحرص - بعناية	tired	متعب
habits	عادات	advice	نصيحة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
listen	يستمع	listened
learn	يتعلم	learned
clean	ينظف	cleaned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
keep	يحافظ على	kept
forget	ينسى	forgot
take	يأخذ	took

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

keep ... healthy

يحافظ على صحة

take care of

يعتني بـ

After a few days

بعد بضعة أيام

feel much better

يشعر بتحسن كبير

Look, listen and repeat.

انظر واستمع وردد.

I **exercise** to keep my body healthy.

أمارس التمارين لأحافظ على صحة جسمي.



I **wash my hands** before I eat.

أغسل يديّ قبل أن أكل.

I **clean my room** every day.

أنظف غرفتي كل يوم.



I **stay in bed** when I am sick.

أبقى في السرير عندما أكون مريضاً.

I **rest** to keep my body healthy.

أرتاح لأحافظ على صحة جسمي.



I **take medicine** when I am sick.

أتناول الدواء عندما أكون مريضاً.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Maya Learns to Take Care of Herself

تتعلم مايا الاعتناء بنفسها

Maya likes to play every day, but she often forgets to wash her hands and eat healthy food. One day, she felt sick.

Her friend Salma said, "You must take care of yourself. Wash your hands, eat healthy food, rest, and exercise."



Maya listened to Salma. She washed herself carefully, ate eggs and fruit, drank water, and rested when she felt tired. She also exercised a little every day.

After a few days, Maya felt much better. She said, "I learned that I must take care of myself to stay healthy."

تحب مايا اللعب كل يوم، لكنها كثيرًا ما تنسى غسل يديها وتناول الطعام الصحي. وذات يوم، شعرت بالتعب والمرض. فقالت لها صديقتها سلمى: «عليك أن تعتني بنفسك. اغسلي يديك، وتناولي طعامًا صحيًا، وارتاحي، ومارسي التمارين الرياضية.» استمعت مايا لنصيحة سلمى، فبدأت تهتم بنظافتها، وتتناول البيض والفواكه، وتشرب الماء، وترتاح حين تشعر بالإرهاق، كما أصبحت تمارس القليل من التمارين يوميًا. وبعد أيام قليلة، شعرت مايا بتحسّن كبير، وقالت: «تعلمت أنني يجب أن أعني نفسي لأبقى بصحة جيدة.»

Moral

Taking care of yourself helps you stay healthy and happy.

الاعتناء بنفسك يساعدك على البقاء بصحة وسعادة.

Read again then answer the following questions.

اقرأ مرة أخرى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

1. Who gave Maya advice?

.....

2. Name three healthy habits Maya followed.

.....

3. What is the moral of the text?

.....

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

exercise



exercise

wash my hands



wash my hands

clean my room



clean my room

stay in bed



stay in bed

rest



rest

take medicine



take medicine

1 Read and match.

اقرأ و صل.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1) I exercise to | a) before I eat. |
| 2) I clean | b) when I am sick. |
| 3) I take medicine | c) keep my body healthy. |
| 4) I wash my hands | d) my room every day. |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Exercise makes our body
a) strong b) weak c) old
- Washing your hands keeps you
a) sad b) healthy c) unhealthy
- I take medicine when I am
a) happy b) well c) sick
- We must eat food.
a) healthy b) bad c) big
- I my room every day.
a) help b) clean c) cook
- You must take care of
a) yourself b) myself c) himself
- Maya washed carefully.
a) myself b) yourself c) herself
- The cat cleans every day.
a) itself b) himself c) themselves

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

cook - wash - exercise

I take care of myself. I 1) my hands before I eat.
I stay in bed when I am sick. I 2) every morning to
stay strong. I need to rest when I am tired.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Mazen likes to play every day, but he often forgets to wash his hands and eat healthy food. One day, he felt sick. His friend Nour said, "You should wash your hands, eat healthy food, rest, and exercise." Mazen listened to Nour. He washed himself carefully, ate eggs and fruit, drank water, and rested when he felt tired.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Mazen ate
a) cheese b) eggs c) vegetables
- Mazen likes to every day.
a) cook b) play c) watch TV

B) Answer the following questions.

- What should Mazen do?
- What is the moral of the text?

5 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Taking care of yourself

exercise - wash - clean

Lesson

4

Our Healthy Plan

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.



yogurt

زبادي



soup

حساء / شوربة



honey

عسل



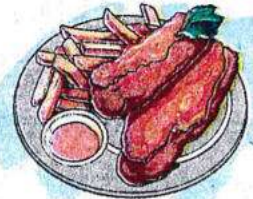
breakfast

الإفطار



lunch

الغداء



dinner

العشاء



meal

وجبة



snack

وجبة خفيفة



menu

قائمة طعام

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

hungry

جائع

stomachache

ألم في المعدة

favorite

مفضل

advice

نصيحة

family

أسرة

amount

كمية

like

مثل - يشبه

carrot

جزرة

sandwich

ساندوتش

tomato

حبة طماطم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
follow	يتبع	followed	tell	يخبر	told
drink	يشرب	drank	put	يضع	put
make	يصنع	made	eat	يأكل	ate

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

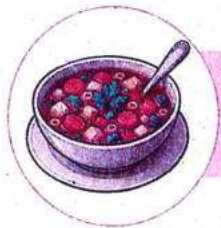
in the morning	في الصباح	love + (v -ing)	يحب
have a stomachache	لديه ألم في المعدة	follow the advice	يتبع النصيحة
feel strong	يشعر بالقوة		

Look, listen and repeat.

انظر واستمع وردد.

I eat yogurt with honey.

أتناول الزبادي مع العسل.



We drink some soup when we're hungry.

نشرب الحساء عندما نشعر بالجوع.

I put a little honey in my yogurt.

أضيف قليلاً من العسل إلى الزبادي.



I eat breakfast at 7 a.m.

أتناول فطوري في الساعة صباحاً.

Lunch is my favorite meal.

الغداء هو وجبتي المفضلة.



I eat dinner with my family.

أتناول العشاء مع عائلتي.

I eat a healthy snack in the afternoon.

أتناول وجبة خفيفة صحية بعد الظهر.



I made a healthy menu for today.

أعددت قائمة طعام صحية لهذا اليوم.

Language Notes

have / has / had

يأتي الفعل **have** بمعنى (يأكل eat) أو (يشرب drink) إذا جاء بعده طعام.

e.g. Omar **had** a little yogurt.

e.g. I **have** a lot of water.

e.g. He **has** an apple.

يأتي الفعل **have** بمعنى (عنده / لديه / مصاب) مع الأمراض.

e.g. He felt tired and **had** a stomachache.

e.g. I **have** a cold / headache.

e.g. He **has** a headache.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Omar's Healthy Menu

Omar loved eating **snacks** like **chips**, cake, and **soda**. He did not eat many fruits or vegetables. One day, he felt tired and had **a stomachache**.

His teacher told him, "Omar, you need to eat healthy foods like fruits, vegetable, and meat.

Omar followed the advice. For breakfast, he ate **an apple** and drank some milk. For lunch, he had some rice and some salad. For **a snack**, he had **yogurt**. He felt strong and happy again.



كان عمر يحب تناول الوجبات الخفيفة مثل الشيبسي والكيك والمشروبات الغازية. ولم يكن يأكل الكثير من الفواكه أو الخضروات. وفي أحد الأيام، شعر بالتعب وأصابه ألم في معدته.

قالت له معلمته: «يا عمر، عليك أن تأكل أطعمة صحية مثل الفواكه والخضروات واللحم». اتبع عمر النصيحة. في الإفطار، أكل تفاحة وشرب بعض الحليب. وفي الغداء، تناول الأرز مع السلطة. وللوجبة الخفيفة، أكل الزبادي. شعر عمر بالقوة والسعادة من جديد.

Moral

Eating healthy food in the right amounts helps your body stay strong and happy.

تناول الطعام الصحي بكميات مناسبة يساعد جسمك على البقاء قويًا ويمنحك الشعور بالسعادة.

Read again then answer the following questions.

اقرأ مرة أخرى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

1. What snacks did Omar like to eat before?
.....
2. How did Omar feel when he ate unhealthy food?
.....
3. Who gave Omar advice about healthy eating?
.....

Practice On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I eat yogurt with
 a) milk b) honey c) water
2. My favorite is lunch.
 a) meal b) sport c) day
3. I eat in the morning.
 a) dinner b) lunch c) breakfast
4. I eat like chips and cake.
 a) snacks b) meat c) rice
5. I have dinner with my
 a) teacher b) family c) school
6. I drink some when I'm hungry.
 a) eggs b) rice c) soup
7. Fruits and vegetables are foods.
 a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad
8. You must follow your dad's
 a) book b) advice c) snack
9. Eating healthy food in the right helps your body stay strong and happy.
 a) numbers b) times c) amounts
10. I made a healthy for today.
 a) menu b) homework c) table

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

yogurt



yogurt

soup



soup

honey



honey

breakfast



breakfast

lunch



lunch

dinner



dinner

meal



meal

snack



snack

menu



menu

Language in Use

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

They are nouns that have **singular** and **plural** form. We can count them (1, 2, 3, ...).

هي أسماء لها مفرد وجمع ، ويمكن عدّها (١ ، ٢ ، ٣ ، ...) .

- We use (**a / an**) for singular nouns.

نستخدم **a / an** مع الاسم المفرد .

- We use **numbers** for more than one (plural).

نستخدم الأعداد لأكثر من واحد (الجمع) .

Singular	Plural
a carrot	two carrot s
an apple	three apple s
an egg	four egg s

Remember

a + a consonant قبل الحرف الساكن

e.g. **a** bag, **a** cat, **a** dog, **a** fan, **a** hat

an + a vowel (a, e, i, o, u) قبل الحرف المتحرك

e.g. **an** ant, **an** umbrella, **an** elephant, **an** apple, **an** ice cream

Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

We can't count them. They don't have a **plural** form.

هي أسماء لا يمكننا عدّها، وليس لها صيغة جمع.

milk, rice, pasta, soup, honey, water

- We don't use (**a / an**) with them.

لا نستخدم **a / an** معهم.

- We use **some** for a part of it.

نستخدم **(some بعض)** للتعبير عن جزء منها.

some rice, **some** water

Practice On Language

1 Read and write in the right column.

اقرأ واكتب في العمود الصحيح.

tomato - milk - water - rice - apple - sandwich - honey -
snack - soup - potato

Countable	Uncountable
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	

2 Complete with (a, an, or some):

أكمل بـ:

1. egg

4. cheese

2. water

5. orange

3. soda

6. snack

Activities

On Lesson

4

1 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوين كلمة.

1 n u
c
l h



.....

2 u s
p o



.....

3 n m
e u



.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I put a little in my yogurt.
a) milk b) honey c) soup
- I eat a healthy in the afternoon.
a) menu b) breakfast c) snack
- Lunch is my favorite
a) game b) meal c) fruit
- I eat apple for breakfast.
a) a b) an c) some
- He had rice.
a) some b) a c) an
- Omar had tomato.
a) a b) an c) some

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

fries - snack - fruits

I love eating healthy foods. I eat 1) and vegetables.
For breakfast, I have some milk and an apple. For a 2),
I have yogurt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar loved eating snacks like chips, cake, and soda. One day, he felt tired and had a stomachache. His teacher advised him to eat healthy foods like fruits, vegetables and meat. Omar followed the advice. He ate an apple and drank some milk for breakfast. He felt strong and happy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Omar felt and had a stomachache.
a) tired b) happy c) good
- His advised him to eat healthy food.
a) mother b) teacher c) friend

B) Answer the following questions.

- What snacks did Omar like to eat?
- What did he drink for breakfast?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- eat - I - dinner - my family - with -
- had - rice - He - some -

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- what do you like to eat
- omar eats healthy snacks

7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Your healthy menu

yogurt - hungry - fruits

Review On Unit

2

Vocabulary

Lesson (1)	food	طعام
	meat	لحمة
	sugar	سكر
	fruits	فواكه
	water	مياه
	vegetables	خضراوات

Lesson (2)	milk	حليب - لبن
	cheese	جبنة
	nuts	مكسرات
	chips	شيبسي
	fries	بطاطس محمرة
	sweets	حلويات

Lesson (3)	exercise	يتمرن
	clean	ينظف
	rest	راحة
	medicine	أدوية
	stay in bed	يبقى في السرير
	sick	مريض
	wash	يغسل

Lesson (4)	yogurt	زبادي
	soup	حساء / شوربة
	honey	عسل
	breakfast	إفطار
	lunch	غداء
	dinner	عشاء
	snack	وجبة خفيفة

Phonics

ea: eat	-	meat	-	beans
ee: cheese	-	sweet	-	tree

Language

1- Reflexive pronouns:

- I can wash **myself**.
- **We** made a cake **ourselves**.

2- Countable & Uncountable

- a carrot (**two** carrots) **an** apple
- some** milk / rice

Writing Corner

- Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Food for energy

Food gives us energy. Meat gives us protein to be strong. Fruits and vegetables give us vitamins to keep us healthy.

Healthy and unhealthy food

Milk is good for our bones. Cheese is rich in calcium. Sweets are bad for our teeth.

Staying healthy

I exercise to keep my body healthy. I wash my hands before I eat. I take medicine when I am sick.

My healthy menu

I eat yogurt with honey. I drink some soup when I'm hungry. I eat a lot of fruits and vegetables.

Dictation On Unit 2

Lesson (1)	water	فيتامينات
	vegetables	طعام
	protein	لحوم
	fruits	سكر
Lesson (2)	fries	بيض
	lollipops	خبز
	milk	مكسرات
	soda	رقائق البطاطس
Lesson (3)	take medicine	يتمرن
	stay in bed	ينظف
	rest	صحي
	wash	مريض
Lesson (4)	snack	زبادي
	meal	الإفطار
	menu	الغداء
	dinner	بعد الظهر

Test Based On Unit 2

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

1 b_ans

2 gr_en

3 sw_ets

4 m_at

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My favorite is lunch.

- a) meal b) story c) sport

2. Cake and soda are

- a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good

3. I made a healthy for today.

- a) book b) family c) menu

4. Sarah taught to play the guitar.

- a) myself b) himself c) herself

5. I had rice for lunch.

- a) some b) a c) an

6. He had carrot.

- a) a b) an c) some

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

exercise - stay - wash

You should always take care of yourself. You must

- 1) your hands and eat healthy food. When you are sick, 2) in bed and take some medicine.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 e c
e s
h e



.....

2 i o o
l o l
p p l



.....

3 r s x
e s i
e c e



.....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Food gives us energy to play, learn, and grow. Different foods give us different kinds of energy. Meat gives our body protein to make us strong. Fruits and vegetables give us vitamins to keep us healthy. They also help us fight sickness. Sugar gives us quick energy, but too much sugar is not good for our health. Water is very important because it helps our body work well. When we eat the right food and drink enough water, we have good energy every day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Fruits and vegetables give us
a) protein b) vitamins c) fats
- gives us quick energy.
a) Sugar b) Meat c) Water

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does meat give us?
- Why is water important?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- in - rich - Cheese - calcium - is - .
.....

- with - I - honey - eat - yogurt - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. she exercises every day

2. what do you eat

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Healthy food

energy - fish - eggs

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Food gives us

a) energy

b) sugar

c) oil

2. is good for our bones.

a) Bread

b) Milk

c) Sweets

3. Eggs are full of

a) protein

b) fat

c) chips

2 Fill in the missing letters.

أكمل الحروف الناقصة.

1 m_at

2 sw_et

3 s_da

4 c_ke

3 Fill in the missing letters.

أكمل الحروف الناقصة.

1 w_ter

2 n_ts

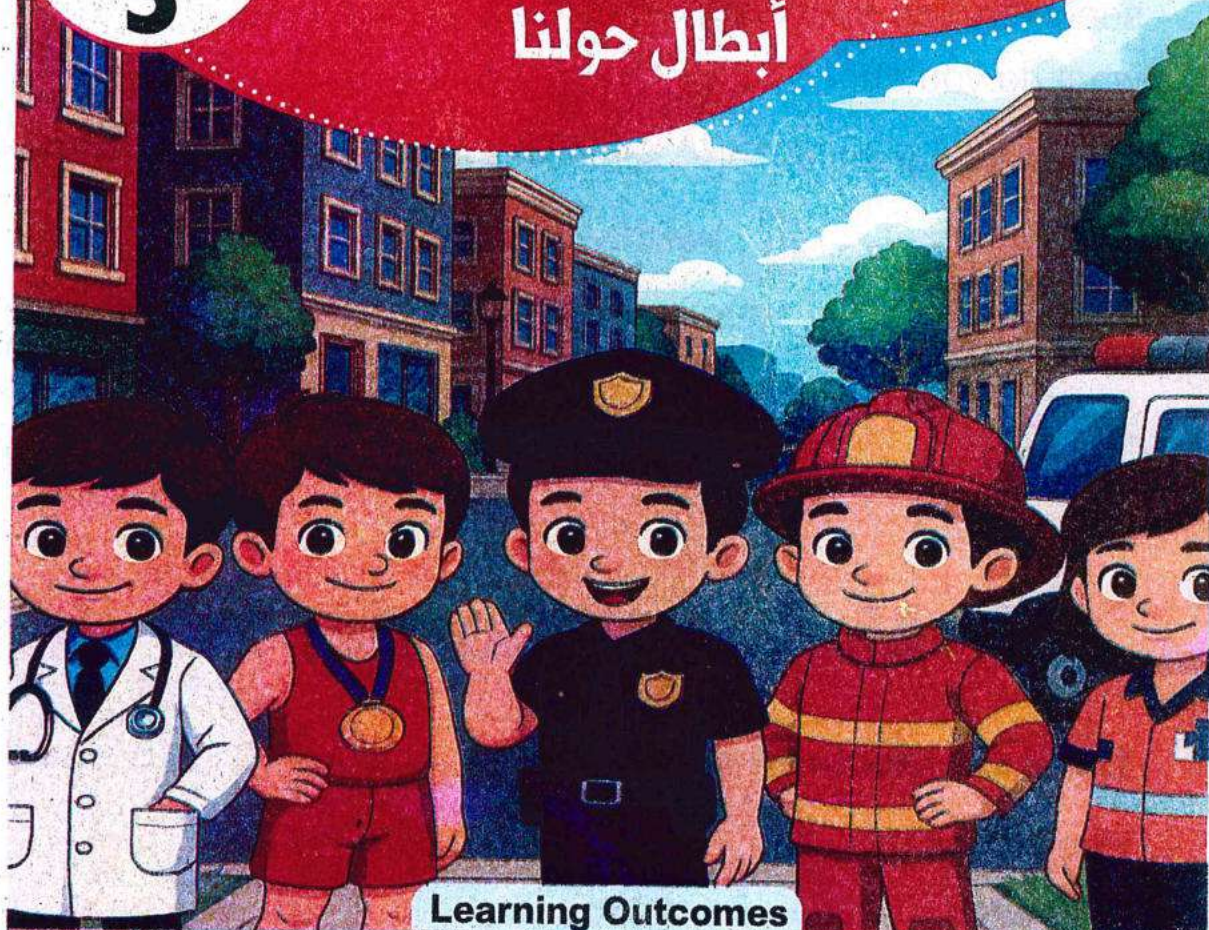
3 ch_ese

4 _at

Unit 3

Heroes Around Us

أبطال حولنا



Learning Outcomes

Speaking	Use target vocabulary to talk about heroes in our life. Use adverbs of sequence to describe a hero's actions in order. Give a short presentation about a chosen hero.	يستخدم المفردات المستهدفة ليتحدث عن الأبطال في حياتنا. يستخدم ظروف التسلسل لوصف أفعال البطل بالترتيب. يقدم عرضًا قصيرًا عن بطل تم اختياره.
Reading	Recognize target vocabulary about heroes in short texts. Answer comprehension questions about Egyptian and everyday heroes based on a short reading text.	يتعرف على المفردات المستهدفة المتعلقة بالأبطال في نصوص قصيرة. يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم حول الأبطال المصريين والأبطال في حياتنا اليومية بناءً على نص قراءة قصير.
Listening	Recognize the correct order of story events. Identify the gist of a short listening text about heroes. Listen to a list and pick out the helpful actions. Carry out instructions for pair and group activities. Recognize the silent e in a short listening text correctly.	يتعرف على الترتيب الصحيح لأحداث القصة. يستخلص الفكرة العامة من نص استماعي قصير عن الأبطال. يسمع إلى قائمة ويحدد الأفعال المفيدة. ينفذ التعليمات الخاصة بأنشطة الأزواج والمجموعات. يتعرف على حرف (e) الصامت في نص استماعي قصير بطريقة صحيحة.
Writing	Use vocabulary to describe a hero's actions. Use first... then... to describe a sequence of events. Plan a short presentation on a chosen Egyptian hero.	يستخدم المفردات لوصف أفعال البطل. يستخدم «أولاً... ثم...» لوصف تسلسل الأحداث. يخطط لعرض قصير عن بطل مصري مختار.

Lesson

1

My Hero

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.



hero

بطل



brave

شجاع



strong

قوي



kind

لطيف - عطوف



smart

ذكي



firefighter

رجل إطفاء

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

courage

شجاعة

uniform

زّي رسمي

hard times

أوقات صعبة

fire alarm

إنذار الحريق

swimmer

سباح

fire truck

شاحنة الإطفاء

difficult

صعب

ladder

سلم

special

خاص - مميز

building

مبنى

helmet

خوذة

honor

شرف - تكريم

Definitions تعريفات

A hero	someone who does something special, good, or brave	بطل: شخص يقوم بعمل مميز أو جيد أو شجاع
brave	shows courage in hard times	شجاع: يُظهر الشجاعة في الأوقات الصعبة
strong	can do difficult things easily	قوي: يستطيع أن يفعل الأمور الصعبة بسهولة
kind	being nice and caring about others	لطيف - عطوف: يُعامل الآخرين بلطف ويهتم بهم
smart	solves problems well	ذكي: يحل المشكلات بطريقة جيدة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
call	يسمى	call ed		save	ينقذ	save d	
arrive	يصل	arrive d		fill	يملأ	fill ed	
climb	يتسلق	climb ed		encourage	يشجع	encourage d	
spray	يرش	spray ed		help	يساعد	help ed	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
ring	يرن	rang		put on	يرتدي	put on	
teach	يعلم	taught		drive	يقود	drove	

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

care about	يهتم بـ	solve problems	يحل مشكلات
look easy	يبدو سهلاً	how to swim	كيف يسبح
as well	أيضاً	in trouble	في مشكلة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Karim : Look at that swimmer! He is so **strong**.

انظر إلى ذلك السباح! إنه قوي جدًا.

Omar : Yes, he makes swimming look easy, even when it's difficult.

نعم، يجعل السباحة تبدو سهلة حتى عندما تكون صعبة.

Karim : Do you think he is a **hero**?

هل تظن أنه بطل؟

Omar : I do. Last week he helped a girl who couldn't swim in the pool.

أعتقد ذلك، الأسبوع الماضي ساعد فتاة لا تستطيع السباحة في المسبح.

Karim : That is very **brave**.

إنه شجاع جدًا.

Omar : He is! He teaches children how to swim safely and uses kind words to encourage them.

إنه كذلك!، فهو يعلم الأطفال كيف يسبحون بأمان، ويستخدم كلمات لطيفة لتشجيعهم.

Karim : Yes, being kind means you show care to others.

نعم، فاللطف يعني أن تُظهر اهتمامك بالآخرين.

Omar : He is **smart** as well.

وهو ذكي أيضًا.

Karim : Why **smart**?

ولماذا تقول إنه ذكي؟

Omar : Because he solves problems well. If someone is in trouble, he knows what to do.

لأنه يحل المشكلات جيدًا، وإذا وقع شخص ما في مشكلة، يعرف ما يجب فعله.

Karim : Wow, **strong**, **brave**, **kind**, and **smart**.

رائع، قوي وشجاع ولطيف وذكي!

Omar : Yes, that's why everyone calls him a **true hero**!

نعم، ولهذا يسميه الجميع بطلاً حقيقياً!

Read again, then write (T) for true or (F) for false.

1. The swimmer is strong. ()
2. The girl could swim in the pool. ()
3. Being kind means you show care to others. ()
4. The swimmer uses bad words. ()

Look and read.

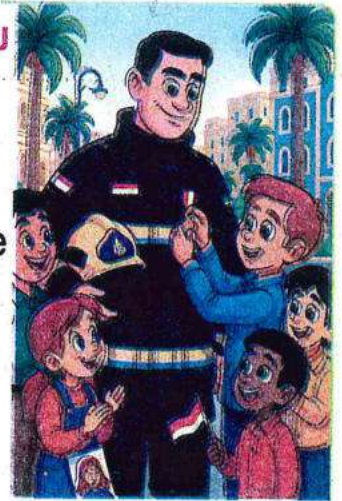
انظر واقرأ.

The Brave Firefighter

رجل الإطفاء الشجاع

Khaled is a brave firefighter. Every morning, he puts on his helmet and uniform. One afternoon, the fire alarm rang loudly. Khaled jumped into the fire truck and drove quickly through the streets.

There was a fire in a building and smoke filled the sky. When he arrived, the fire was big, but Khaled stayed calm. **First**, he climbed the ladder. **Then**, he sprayed water, and saved a little boy from the smoke. The family of the boy felt happy, and said "Thank you!" Khaled smiled proudly. "I like to help others."



خالد رجل إطفاء شجاع. كل صباح، يرتدي خوذته وزِيَّه الخاص. في أحد الأيام بعد الظهر، دوى جرس الإنذار بصوت عالٍ. قفز خالد إلى شاحنة الإطفاء وقاد بسرعة عبر الشوارع. كان هناك حريق في أحد المباني، والدخان يملأ السماء. عندما وصل، كان الحريق كبيرًا، لكن خالد ظل هادئًا. أولًا، تسلق السلم، ثم رش الماء، وأنقذ صبيًا صغيرًا من الدخان. شعرت عائلة الصبي بالسعادة وقالت: «شكرًا لك!» ابتسم خالد بفخر وقال: «أحب أن أساعد الآخرين.»

Moral

Helping others is the greatest honor.

مساعدة الآخرين هي أعظم شرف.

Practice On Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A man can do difficult things easily.
a) smart b) strong c) kind
2. Omar is He solves problems well.
a) shy b) weak c) smart
3. A teaches children how to swim.
a) swimmer b) doctor c) nurse
4. Ahmed is a He saved a boy from the fire.
a) kind b) hero c) pilot
5. A firefighter puts on a and a uniform.
a) helmet b) shirt c) cap
6. The smoke filled the
a) water b) sky c) bag
7. My mom is She always helps me.
a) kind b) weak c) smart
8. If someone is, we should help him.
a) strong b) brave c) in trouble
9. Students must wear their at school.
a) uniform b) caps c) bags
10. Helping others is the greatest
a) homework b) honor c) meal

Language in use

Adverbs of Sequence ظروف التسلسل

Use "first" and "then" to show order

نستخدم «أولاً» و «ثم» لبيان الترتيب.

First: what happens at the beginning

أولاً: ماذا يحدث في البداية

Then: what happens next

ثم: ماذا يحدث بعد ذلك

Examples:

First, Omar trained hard.

Then, he climbed mountains.

First, he saw the fire.

Then, he called for help.

Practice On Language

1 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحاً.

1. helped - she - First - the old man - .
gave him - Then - she - water - .

2. ate my breakfast - First - I - .
went - Then - to school - I - .

2 Complete with (First) or (Then).

أكمل بـ (أولاً) أو (ثم).

1. , the boy put on his uniform.
..... , he went to school.
2. , I did my homework.
..... , I watched TV.

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

hero



hero

brave



brave

strong



strong

kind



kind

smart



smart

firefighter



firefighter

Activities

On Lesson

1

1 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1

r b
e
a v



.....

2

r n t
s g o



.....

3

i k
d n



.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My brother is He can solve problems well.
a) smart b) kind c) safe
- A saves people from fires.
a) teacher b) driver c) firefighter
- Being means to do difficult things easily.
a) brave b) strong c) kind
-, I trained hard. Then, I won the match.
a) First b) Second c) Finally
- I cleaned my room. I watched TV.
a) First b) Then c) but
- First, he saw the fire., he called for help.
a) Second b) Then c) But

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

hero - strong - weak

- Karim : Look at the swimmer! He is so 1)
- Omar : Yes, he makes swimming look easy.
- Karim : Do you think he is a 2) ?
- Omar : Yes, I do. Last week he helped a girl who couldn't swim in the pool.

Lesson (1)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Khaled is a brave firefighter. Every morning, he puts on his helmet and uniform. When the fire alarm rings, he jumps into the fire truck and drives quickly through the streets. When he arrives at the fire, he climbs the ladder and sprays water to save people. He likes to help others.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Khalid puts on his and uniform.
a) helmet b) cap c) shoes
2. He likes to others.
a) take b) help c) play

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is Khaled's job?

.....

4. What does he do when the fire alarm rings?

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. brave - He - and - is - strong - .

.....

2. he - First - saw - fire - the - .

.....

6 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Your hero

brave - strong - saves - help

.....

.....

Lesson

2

Heroes in our daily life

Key vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية

helpful	متعاون	rescue	ينقذ
uniform	زي رسمي	jobs	وظائف
teach	يدرس - يعلم	policewoman	شرطية

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

police officer	ضابط شرطة	team	فريق
patients	مرضى	pilot	طيار
help (n)	مساعدة	grateful	ممتن - شاكر
life - lives	حياة - حيوات	carefully	بعناية
others	الآخرين	afraid	خائف

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

check	يفحص	checked
cry	يبكي	cried
help	يساعد	helped
rescue	ينقذ	rescued
search	يبحث	searched

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

hold	يمسك	held
speak	يتحدث	spoke
wear	يرتدي	wore
find	يجد	found
get	يحصل على	got

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feel better	يشعر بتحسن	What was wrong?	ما الأمر؟
get the best care	يحصل على أفضل رعاية	fly a plane	يقود الطائرة
on her way to	في طريقها إلى	right away	في الحال
make sure	يتأكد	That's amazing!	هذا رائع!
on the street	في الشارع	was lost	كان تائها

Look, listen and repeat.

انظر واستمع وردد.



The boy is **helpful**.

الولد مُتعاون.



Firefighters **rescue** people.

رجال الإطفاء يُنقذون الناس.



The police officers wear a **uniform**.

رجال الشرطة يرتدون الزي الرسمي.



My mom **teaches** math.

أمي تُدرّس الرياضيات.

Listen and read the dialog.

استمع واقرأ الحوار.

Doctor : Hello there! I'm Doctor Ali. My job is to help people feel better.

أهلاً بك! أنا الدكتور علي. وظيفتي هي مساعدة الناس حتى يشعروا بتحسن.

Student : Wow! How do you do that?

رائع! وكيف تفعل ذلك؟



Doctor : I wear a special uniform, which shows I'm a doctor. I check patients and give them the help they need.

أرتدي زيًا خاصًا يوضح أنني طبيب. أفحص المرضى وأقدم لهم المساعدة التي يحتاجونها.

Student : Do you really **rescue** lives?

هل تنقذ الأرواح فعلًا؟

Doctor : Yes! I help people who are very sick or hurt.

نعم! أساعد الأشخاص المرضى جدًا أو المصابين.

Student : Do you work with others?

وهل تعمل مع الآخرين؟

Doctor : Sometimes I work with a team to make sure patients get the best care. We all have different **jobs**.

أحيانًا أعمل مع فريق لأضمن حصول المرضى على أفضل رعاية، ولكل منا وظائف مختلفة.

Student : That's amazing! You're very **helpful**!

هذا مذهل! أنت مفيد جدًا!

Doctor : Thank you! Helping others and keeping them healthy is very important.

شكرًا لك! مساعدة الآخرين والحفاظ على صحتهم أمر بالغ الأهمية.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The student thinks the doctor is

a) helpful

b) funny

c) shy

2. The doctor wears a

a) hat

b) uniform

c) helmet

3. The doctor works with a

a) pilot

b) teacher

c) team

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Officer Asmaa – The Helpful Policewoman

الضابط أسماء - الشرطة المتعاونة



Officer Asmaa is a policewoman in Cairo. One sunny morning, she was walking on her way to work when she saw a little child crying in the street. First, she stopped right away and spoke to him kindly, asking what was wrong. The child was lost and could not find his parents. Officer Asmaa held his hand, and told him not to be afraid. Then, she carefully searched the street until she found his parents. They were very happy. Officer Asmaa is a brave policewoman who protects people and works hard to keep the city safe. We are grateful for her and all police officers who keep us safe every day.

الضابطه أسماء هي شرطية تعمل في القاهرة. في صباح مشمس، كانت تسير في طريقها إلى العمل عندما رأت طفلاً صغيراً يبكي في الشارع. توقفت فوراً وتحدثت معه بلطف، وسألته عما حدث. كان الطفل تائهاً ولا يستطيع العثور على والديه. أمسكت الضابطه أسماء بيده وطمانته قائلةً له ألا يخاف. ثم بدأت تبحث في الشارع بحرص حتى عثرت على والديه، فشعروا بسعادة كبيرة. الضابطه أسماء شرطية شجاعة تحمي الناس وتعمل بجد للحفاظ على أمن المدينة. نحن ممتنون لها ولكل رجال ونساء الشرطة الذين يحموننا ويحافظون على سلامتنا كل يوم.

Moral

We should always be kind and help others in need.

يجب علينا دائماً أن نكون لطفاء ونساعد الآخرين عند حاجتهم إلى المساعدة.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

hand - lost - safe - policewoman - afraid

1. Officer Asmaa is a in Cairo.
2. The child was and could not find his parents.
3. She held his and told him not to be
4. Police officers work hard to keep the city

Practice On Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A doctor's is to help sick people.
a) job b) name c) hand
2. My brother is because he helps his friends.
a) brave b) sad c) helpful
3. What's your uncle's ? He is an engineer.
a) name b) job c) age
4. The doctor checks
a) patients b) students c) players
5. I work with a
a) book b) team c) uniform
6. What is ? I am lost.
a) this b) wrong c) right
7. Officer Asmaa is a brave
a) policewoman b) teacher c) nurse
8. We are to all police officers who keep us safe.
a) sad b) grateful c) angry
9. The child was and couldn't find his parents.
a) lost b) happy c) care
10. I like to play with my
a) kit b) kite c) sale
11. We should always be kind and others in need.
a) help b) tied c) cry



Phonics Focus

حرف "e" السحري "e" Magic

Some words have a magic 'e' at the end. It doesn't make a sound, but it makes the vowel before it to say its name.

بعض الكلمات تحتوي في نهايتها على حرف (e) السحري، لا يُنطق، لكنه يجعل الحرف المتحرك الذي قبله ينطق اسمه.

Short /a/		Long /eɪ/	
mad	مجنون	made	صنع
tap	حنفية	tape	شريط
hat	قبعة	hate	يكره
Short /ɪ/		Long /aɪ/	
kit	عدة	kite	طائرة ورقية
pin	دبوس	pine	صنوبر
bit	قطعة صغيرة	bite	يعض
Short /ɒ/		Long /əʊ/	
hop	يقفز	hope	أمل
not	لا	note	ملاحظة
rob	يسرق	robe	ثوب

More examples (a - e):

name	اسم	brave	شجاع
save	يحفظ - ينقذ	make	يصنع
sale	بيع	safe	آمن

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

helpful

helpful

rescue

rescue

uniform

uniform

teach

teach

job

job

policewoman

policewoman

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

- 1 m_de 2 k_te 3 h_pe 4 br_ve

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The firefighter people from the fire.
a) safe b) rescues c) hurts
- The nurse is very She helps sick people.
a) helpful b) sick c) need
- Police officers wear a
a) shirt b) uniform c) dress
- My dad science at school.
a) makes b) plays c) teaches

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

car - job - uniform

Ali is a doctor. His 1) is to help people feel better. He wears a special 2) He checks patients and give them the help they need.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة.

1

f u e
p
h i i



2

t r d
o
c o



3

c u r
e e s



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Officer Asmaa is a policewoman in Cairo. One sunny morning, she was walking on her way to work when she saw a little child crying in the street. The child was lost and could not find his parents. Officer Asmaa held his hand, and told him not to be afraid. Then, she carefully searched the street until she found his parents. They were very happy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Officer Asmaa told the boy not to be
a) afraid b) hungry c) fast
- The little boy was in the street.
a) running b) playing c) crying

B) Answer the following questions.

- What's Asmaa's job?
- How did the parents feel when they found the boy?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

- teaches - My - math - mom -
- brave - is - Omar - helpful - and -

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- ali is a police officer
- where do you live

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

A police officer

safe - brave - help

Lesson

3

Hero Stories

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.



support

يدعم - يساند



inspire

يلهم



courage

شجاعة



honest

صادق - أمين



leader

قائد

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

talent show	عرض المواهب	shelter	مأوى
captain	كابتن - قائد فريق	poor	فقير
scary	مخيف	hospital	مستشفى
village	قرية	heart	قلب
games	ألعاب	flood	فيضان
blanket	بطانية		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
move	ينتقل moved	carry	يحمل carried
rest	يستريح rested	warn	يحذر warned
lie	يكذب lied	thank	يشكر thanked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
give	يعطي gave	build	يبني built
tell	يخبر - يخبر told	go	يذهب went

Definitions

تعريفات

support to help someone

يساند - يدعم: يُساعد شخصًا

inspire to make someone want to do something good

يلهم: يجعل شخصًا يفعل شيئًا جيدًا

leader a person who shows others what to do

قائد: شخص يوضح للآخرين ما يجب فعله

courage being brave when something is hard or scary

شجاعة: أن تكون شجاعًا عندما يكون الأمر صعبًا أو مخيفًا

honest always telling the truth.

صادق - أمين: دائمًا يقول الصدق.

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

tell the truth

يقول الصدق

in front of

أمام

check on

يطمنن على

go home

يذهب للبيت

look up to

يعجب بـ

do what is right

يفعل الصواب

Look and learn.

انظر وتعلم.



My friend **supports** me when I'm sad.

تُساندني صديقتي عندما أكون حزينة.

Mo Salah **inspires** me to play football.

محمد صلاح يلهمني لألعب كرة القدم.



A good **leader** helps his team.

القائد الجيد يساعد فريقه.

He shows **courage** in the talent show.

إنه يُظهر شجاعة في عرض المواهب.



Mourad is **honest** and never lies.

مراد صادق ولا يكذب أبدًا.

Read the dialog and act it out.

اقرأ الحوار وقيم بتمثيله.

Lina : I read a story about a girl who helped her **village** during a **flood**.

قرأت قصة عن فتاة ساعدت قريتها أثناء الفيضانات.

Hala : Really? What did she do? **حقاً؟ ماذا فعلت؟**

Lina : First, she told the people about the flood. Then, she helped them move to a safe place.

أولاً، أخبرت الناس عن الفيضان. ثم ساعدتهم على الانتقال إلى مكان آمن.

Hala : That's amazing. She was a great leader and showed courage.

هذا رائع. لقد كانت قائدة عظيمة وأظهرت شجاعة.

Lina : Yes! She inspired everyone and gave support to those who needed it.

نعم! لقد ألهمت الجميع وقدمت الدعم لمن كان بحاجة إليه.

Hala : I want to be like her someday.

أريد أن أكون مثلها في يوم من الأيام.

- Fill in the blanks with (First) or (Then). املاء الفراغات بكلمة «أولاً» أو «ثم».

- , the girl warned the people.
..... , she helped them move to a safe place.
- , she carried food to the families.
..... , she stayed to make sure everyone was okay.
- , she told the children a story to keep them calm.
..... , she gave them warm blankets.
- , she cleaned the shelter.
..... , she went to check on the sick people.
- , she thanked everyone for working together.
..... , she went home to rest.

Look and read.

A Helping Hero

Heba helped many people during hard times in Egypt. She always cared about others and wanted to make their lives better. **First**, she gave food and clothes to poor families so they could live happily. **Then**, she helped build hospitals to support sick people in need. Heba is also very honest and brave. She is not afraid to do what is right. Many Egyptians look up to her because she shows them how to be kind and strong. Her good heart and courage inspire everyone.



ساعدت هبة الكثير من الناس في الأوقات الصعبة في مصر. كانت دائماً تهتم بالآخرين وتريد أن تجعل حياتهم أفضل. أولاً، قدمت الطعام والملابس للعائلات الفقيرة حتى يعيشوا بسعادة. ثم ساعدت في بناء المستشفيات لدعم المرضى المحتاجين. هبة أيضاً صديقة جداً وشجاعة. فهي لا تخاف من فعل ما هو صحيح. كثير من المصريين يعتبرونها قدوة لأنها تعلمهم كيف يكونوا طيبين وأقوياء. قلبها الطيب وشجاعتها يلهمان الجميع.

Moral

Helping others can change lives and inspire kindness.

مساعدة الآخرين يمكن أن تغيّر الحياة وتلهم اللطف / العطف.

Answer the following questions.

1. Who did Heba help?

.....

2. What did Heba give to poor families?

.....

3. What did Heba help build?

.....

4. How can you describe Heba?

.....

Trace and write.

support

support

leader

leader

honest

honest

inspire

inspire

courage

courage

flood

flood

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My friends me when I need help.
a) go b) support c) move
2. means a person who tells the truth.
a) Honest b) Courage c) Inspire
3. The captain is the of the team.
a) teacher b) doctor c) leader
4. He shows in the talent show.
a) courage b) lie c) support
5. My teacher me to try new things.
a) carries b) inspires c) warns
6. Omar never lies. He is
a) smart b) bad c) honest
7. To try something hard without fear is
a) courage b) help c) leader
8. They helped build for sick people.
a) schools b) shops c) hospitals

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

hospitals - cared - inspire

Heba helped many people during hard times in Egypt. She always 1) about others. First, she gave food and clothes to poor families. Then, she helped build 2) to support sick people in need.

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|------------|--|
| 1) support | a) to make someone want to do something good |
| 2) honest | b) to help someone |
| 3) inspire | c) always telling the truth |

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 a e e l r d 	2 t e h s o 	3 r p s t u p o 
---	---	--

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. leader - his team - A good - helps -
2. did - What - do - she - ?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. first, she helped people
2. omar is honest

7 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

A doctor's job

hospitals - patients - care - kind

Lesson

4

Celebrating Our Heroes

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



athlete

لاعب رياضي



event

حدث - فعالية



respect

يحترم



medal

ميدالية

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

race

سباق

party

حفلة

parents

الوالدان

clap

يصفق

famous

مشهور

hard work

العمل الجاد

fast

سريع - بسرعة

train (v)

يتدرب

sports

الرياضة

success

النجاح

Definitions تعريفات

medal something you can win

ميدالية: شيء يمكنك الفوز به

respect we respect someone when we are polite to them

يحترم: نحترم شخصاً عندما نكون مهذبين معه

event something important that happens every month or year

حدث - فعالية: شيء مهم يحدث كل شهر أو كل سنة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
train	يتدرب	trained	honor	يُكرِّم	honored
clap	يصفق	clapped	run	يجري	ran
practice	يتمرن	practiced	win	يفوز	won

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

win a gold medal	يفوز بميدالية ذهبية	get ready for	يستعد لـ
never give up	لا يستسلم أبداً	at last	أخيراً
bring success	يجلب النجاح	on Thursday	في يوم الخميس

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ

An **athlete** runs fast in the race.

الرياضي يجري بسرعة في السباق.



We should **respect** our parents.

يجب أن نحترم والدينا.

The school **event** is on Thursday.

فعالية المدرسة ستكون يوم الخميس.



The boy won a gold **medal** in sports.

فاز الولد بميدالية ذهبية في الرياضة.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

The Gold Medal

Feryal Ashraf is a famous Egyptian athlete. She worked hard every day to get ready for a big event. She trained, practiced, and never gave up. At last, she won a gold medal for Egypt. Her school made a party to celebrate her. Everyone clapped and smiled for her. Feryal said, "This medal is for everyone who helped me."



فريال أشرف رياضية مصرية مشهورة. كانت تعمل بجد كل يوم لتستعد لحدث كبير. تدرّبت، وواصلت التمرين، ولم تستسلم أبدًا. وأخيرًا، فازت بميدالية ذهبية لمصر. أقامت مدرستها حفلة للاحتفال بها. صفق لها الجميع وابتسموا من أجلها. قالت فريال: «هذه الميدالية لكل من ساعدني.»

Moral

Hard work brings success.

العمل الجاد يجلب النجاح.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Feryal Ashraf is an Egyptian
a) teacher b) athlete c) nurse
- Feryal won a medal for Egypt
a) gold b) silver c) plastic
- Hard work brings
a) illness b) success c) event
- Everyone and smiled for her.
a) clapped b) shouted c) cried

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

athlete

athlete

respect

respect

event

event

medal

medal

train

train

famous

famous

clap

clap

success

success

hero

hero

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A is something you can win.
a) medal b) model c) hat
2. Omar is an He trains very hard.
a) engineer b) athlete c) nurse
3. We have a school every month.
a) homework b) gold c) event
4. We should our teachers.
a) respect b) give c) sleep
5. Omar won a in the race.
a) book b) medal c) bag
6. Hard work brings
a) success b) sleep c) problems
7. The school event is Thursday.
a) on b) in c) at
8. Everyone and smiled for the winner.
a) clapped b) worked c) won

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

athlete - respect - event - medal

1. The school is on Monday.
2. Omar won a gold in the race.
3. We should our parents.
4. The trains hard every day.

3 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة.

1 n e t v 

.....

2 a m l e d 

.....

3 l e a t h e t 

.....

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Feryal Ashraf is a famous Egyptian athlete. She worked hard every day to get ready for a big event. She trained, practiced, and never gave up. At last, she won a gold medal for Egypt. Her school made a party to celebrate her. Everyone clapped and smiled for her. Feryal said, "This medal is for everyone who helped me."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Feryal never
 a) gave up b) trained c) practiced
- Everyone for her.
 a) ran b) shouted c) clapped

B) Answer the following questions.

- Who is Feryal Ashraf?
- What did she win for Egypt?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- medal - gold - won - a - Ahmed - .

- honor - heroes - We - our - .

- respect - our - parents - We - should - .

Review On Unit

3

Vocabulary

Lesson (1)	hero	بطل
	brave	شجاع
	strong	قوي
	kind	لطيف - عطوف
	smart	ذكي

Lesson (2)	helpful	متعاون
	rescue	ينقذ
	uniform	زِيّ موحد
	teach	يُدرّس - يعلم
	jobs	وظائف

Lesson (3)	support	يساعد / يدعم
	inspire	يلهم
	leader	قائد
	courage	شجاعة
	honest	صادق

Lesson (4)	athlete	لاعب رياضي
	respect	يحترم
	event	حدث - فعالية
	medal	ميدالية
	famous	مشهور

Phonics: Magic "e"

ma <u>e</u>	مجنون	made	صنع
ha <u>t</u>	قبعة	hate	يكره
ki <u>t</u>	عدة	kite	طائرة ورقية
pi <u>n</u>	دبوس	pine	صنوبر
no <u>t</u>	لا	note	ملاحظة
ro <u>b</u>	يسرق	robe	ثوب

Language Adverbs of Sequence

- **First**, Omar trained hard.
- **Then**, he climbed the mountain.

Writing Corner

- Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

My hero

My hero is the firefighter. He is brave and strong. He saves people from fires.

A Doctor's job

A doctor helps people feel better. He checks his patients. He makes sure patients get the best care.

A famous athlete

Feryal Ashraf is a famous Egyptian athlete. She won a gold medal for Egypt. She trained hard and never gave up.

A police officer

A police officer helps keep us safe. He helps people in need. We are grateful to all police officers.

Dictation On Unit

3

Lesson (1)

firefighter

سيارة الإطفاء

helmet

بطل

smoke

شجاع

smart

قوي

Lesson (2)

patients

متعاون

team

زي رسمي

police officer

ينقذ

care

وظائف

Lesson (3)

honest

يساند

flood

يلهم

leader

يكذب

courage

عرض الموهوبين

Lesson (4)

athlete

مشهور

medal

يتدرب

event

يصفق

get ready

يحترم

Test Based On Unit 3

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

- 1 br_ve 2 k_te 3 h_pe 4 n_me

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The pilot wears a when flying a plane.
a) helmet b) uniform c) coat
- I my friend when he needs help.
a) support b) go c) honest
- The athlete won a gold
a) train b) medal c) respect
-, he climbed the ladder.
a) One b) First c) And
- I put on my uniform. I went to school.
a) Then b) Than c) That
-, I did my homework.
a) Last b) But c) First

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

First - policewoman - Then

Officer Asmaa is a 1) in Cairo. She saw a child crying in the street. 2), she spoke to him kindly, asking him what was wrong. Then, she searched the street until she found his parents.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 m h
t l
e e



2 i n
u m r
o f



3 c e
r u
s e



5 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Heba helped many people during a flood in her village. First, she warned the people. Then, she helped them move to a safe place. She carried food to the families and made sure everyone was okay. She gave them warm blankets. She was a great leader and showed courage.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Heba carried to the families.
a) water b) food c) milk
- Heba was a great
a) leader b) teacher c) pilot

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where did Heba help people?
- What did she do first?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

- wears - a special - A doctor - uniform - .
.....

- our - We - parents - respect - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- when is the school event
- hard work brings success

8 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

My hero

teacher - helpful - students

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Ali is a
 a) doctor b) teacher c) nurse
- He wears a
 a) jacket b) uniform c) shirt
- He helps people.
 a) sad b) big c) sick

2 Fill in the missing letter.

أكمل الحرف الناقص.

- str_ng
- sm_rt
- h_pe
- k_te

3 Fill in the missing letter.

أكمل الحرف الناقص.

- unif_rm
- br_ve
- l_ader
- su_port

Review On Units (1, 2 & 3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 _lide | 2 _rass | 3 m_at | 4 sw_et |
| 5 m_de | 6 k_te | 7 t_uck | 8 s_op |

2 Reorder the letters to make a word.

رتب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1 e-t-r-e-t-s | 2 a-v-r-b-e | 3 m-h-e-t-l-e |
| 4 t-u-h-r | 5 u-t-c-r-k | 6 o-e-y-h-n |

3 Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- In an, call for help right away. **SB**

a) emergency	b) street	c) food
--------------	-----------	---------
- Yogurt, soup and honey are **SB**

a) unhealthy	b) healthy	c) dangerous
--------------	------------	--------------
- A firefighter wears a to protect him. **SB**

a) ladder	b) helmet	c) lollipop
-----------	-----------	-------------
- Heroes are people who are **SB**

a) brave	b) snack	c) seat belt
----------	----------	--------------
- You must wear a in the car to stay safe.

a) hat	b) seat belt	c) cap
--------	--------------	--------
- Vegetables give us energy and

a) vitamins	b) protein	c) harm
-------------	------------	---------

7. A firefighter climbs a ladder to people.
a) rescue b) play c) harm
8. The helped the child who was lost.
a) doctor b) nurse c) policeman
9. You must the street carefully.
a) cross b) run c) jump
10., the hero saw the smoke. Then, he put out the fire.
a) Then b) First c) Secondly
11. Meat gives us and helps us grow.
a) fat b) protein c) vitamins
12. First, the alarm rang., the firefighter came.
a) But b) That c) Then
13. Wear a to protect your head.
a) cap b) helmet c) shoe
14. A is someone you don't know.
a) stranger b) nurse c) hero
15. We must our parents and teachers.
a) ignore b) hurt c) respect
16. You must follow the rules.
a) safety b) food c) save
17. The takes sick people to the hospital.
a) bus b) train c) ambulance
18. I wash every day.
a) myself b) himself c) yourself
19. You wear a seat belt in the car.
a) mustn't b) must c) can't

Review (1)

20. You mustn't in the street.
a) run b) ran c) running
21. Omar made a sandwich.
a) herself b) himself c) itself
22. I need water, please.
a) a b) an c) some
23. I have apple for breakfast.
a) a b) an c) some
24. run in the house.
a) Don't b) Doesn't c) Didn't
25. careful with the knife!
a) Being b) Be c) Are

4 Circle the odd one out. SB

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة.

- | | | | | | | |
|--------------|---|----------|---|--------|---|--------|
| 1. cheese | - | rice | - | phone | - | nuts |
| 2. soup | - | computer | - | honey | - | meat |
| 3. policeman | - | bread | - | soda | - | fries |
| 4. healthy | - | vitamins | - | energy | - | tablet |

5 Punctuate the following. SB

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. stop don't touch the knife

.....

2. is this an emergency

.....

3. the ambulance is coming

.....

4. we must honor teachers parents and heroes

.....

Unit 4

Living with Technology

العيش مع التكنولوجيا



Learning Outcomes

Use key vocabulary to name and describe different types of technology.

يستخدم المفردات الأساسية لتسمية ووصف أنواع مختلفة من التكنولوجيا.

Take part in short dialogs about technology, expressing likes, dislikes, and safety rules.

شارك في حوارات قصيرة عن التكنولوجيا، معبرًا عن الإعجاب أو عدم الإعجاب وقواعد الأمان.

Speaking

Ask and answer simple questions about technology use at home, school, and in the future.

يطرح ويحجب عن أسئلة بسيطة حول استخدام التكنولوجيا في المنزل والمدرسة وفي المستقبل.

Use "and, or, but" to connect spoken ideas in conversations.

يستخدم "و، أو، لكن" لربط الأفكار المنطوقة في المحادثات.

Present short oral descriptions of technology devices or inventions using visual prompts.

يقدم أوصافًا شفوية قصيرة عن أجهزة أو اختراعات تكنولوجية باستخدام وسائل بصرية.

Recognize basic technology-related vocabulary in short reading texts.

يتعرف على المفردات الأساسية المتعلقة بالتكنولوجيا في نصوص قراءة قصيرة.

Reading

Follow short texts describing technology and its uses.

يتابع نصوصًا قصيرة تصف التكنولوجيا واستخداماتها.

Recognize conjunctions "and, or, but" in written context.

يتعرف على أدوات الربط "و، أو، لكن" في السياق المكتوب.

Identify supporting details in short reading texts about technology.

يحدد التفاصيل الداعمة في نصوص قصيرة عن التكنولوجيا.

Identify and list online safety tips and instructions in a reading text.

يحدد ويعدّد نصائح وتعليمات الأمان عبر الإنترنت في نص قراءة.

Recognize key words and phrases about technology in short spoken texts.

يتعرف على الكلمات والعبارات الأساسية عن التكنولوجيا في نصوص مسموعة قصيرة.

Listening

Carry out simple instructions related to technology use and online safety.

يتقدّم تعليمات بسيطة تتعلق باستخدام التكنولوجيا والأمان عبر الإنترنت.

Identify supporting details in a short listening text and stories about technology.

يحدد التفاصيل الداعمة في نصوص استماع وقصص قصيرة عن التكنولوجيا.

Recognize R-controlled vowels (ar, er, or) in spoken words.

يتعرف على حروف العلة مع R (ar, er, or) في الكلمات المنطوقة.

Use vocabulary related to technology to write short correct sentences.

يستخدم المفردات المتعلقة بالتكنولوجيا لكتابة جمل قصيرة صحيحة.

Writing

Use "and, or, but" correctly to join simple ideas in writing.

يستخدم "و، أو، لكن" بشكل صحيح لربط الأفكار البسيطة في الكتابة.

Write guided sentences about technology use in daily life.

يكتب جملًا موجهة عن استخدام التكنولوجيا في الحياة اليومية.

Punctuate sentences using 'commas', with "and, or, but."

يضع علامات الترقيم (الفواصل) عند استخدام "و، أو، لكن".

Write a short paragraph describing technology now and in the future.

يكتب فقرة قصيرة تصف التكنولوجيا الآن وفي المستقبل.

Lesson

1

What is Technology?

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.



computer

كمبيوتر / حاسوب



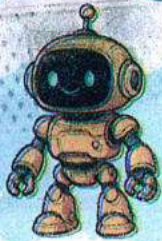
tablet

تابلت



phone

هاتف



robot

إنسان آلي / روبوت



TV

تلفاز

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

schoolwork

واجب مدرسي

e-book

كتاب إلكتروني

humans

البشر

devices

أجهزة

cartoons

أفلام كارتون

birthday

عيد ميلاد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

answer

يجيب

answered

remind

يذكر

reminded

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

think

يفكر

thought

choose

يختار

chose

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

one day

يومًا ما

good for games

مناسب للألعاب

make choices

يختار

send emails

يرسل بريد إلكتروني

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Ali : I have a **computer** and a **tablet**.
I use the **computer** for schoolwork.

لديّ حاسوب وجهاز لوحي، أستخدم الحاسوب في أداء
واجبات المدرسة.

Omar : I have a **phone**, but I don't have
a **computer** at home.

لديّ هاتف، ولكن ليس لديّ حاسوب في المنزل.

Ali : Do you like **robots** or **computers**?

هل تحب الروبوتات أم أجهزة الحاسوب؟

Omar : I like **robots**. They are smart and fun.

أحب الروبوتات، إنها ذكية وممتعة.

Ali : Robots can help people, but they can't think like humans.

تستطيع الروبوتات مساعدة الناس، لكنها لا تستطيع التفكير كالإنسان.

Omar : Maybe one day they will!

ربما في يومٍ ستقوم بذلك!

Read again, then answer the questions.

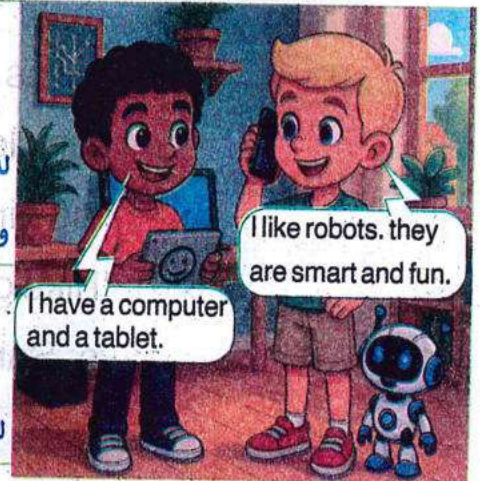
اقرأ مرة أخرى، وأجب.

1. What does Ali have?

.....

2. Why does Omar like robots?

.....



Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.

Samy's Smart Start

Samy loves technology. He wants some devices such as a robot **and** a tablet, **but** he can only choose one for his birthday. Samy visits the shop with his dad. The tablet is good for games **and** reading. The robot can clean his room, answer questions, **and** remind him to do his homework.



Samy thinks hard. "I like games, **but** I need help with my homework," he says. Samy chooses the robot. At home, the robot says, "Hello, Samy. Let's start your homework, or we will be late."

سامي يحب التكنولوجيا، ويريد بعض الأجهزة مثل الروبوت والتابلت، لكنه يستطيع اختيار واحد فقط في عيد ميلاده. يزور سامي المتجر مع والده. التابلت مفيد للألعاب والقراءة، أما الروبوت فيمكنه تنظيف غرفته، والإجابة عن الأسئلة، وتذكيره بأداء واجباته. يفكر سامي ملياً. يقول: «أحب الألعاب، لكنني أحتاج من يساعدني في واجباتي.» يختار سامي الروبوت. في المنزل، يقول الروبوت: «مرحباً، سامي. هيا نبدأ واجبك، وإلا فسنأخر.»

Moral

Ask questions before making choices.

اطرح أسئلة قبل أن تتخذ قراراتك.

Read again, then write (T) for true or (F) for false.

1. Samy loves technology. ()
2. The computer is good for games. ()
3. Samy needs help with his homework. ()
4. Samy chooses the tablet. ()

Practice On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I use the for schoolwork.
a) computer b) robot c) table
2. I use my to talk to friends.
a) TV b) phone c) pen
3. can help people at home.
a) TV b) Chairs c) Robots
4. I read an e-book on my
a) tablet b) TV c) table
5. I watch cartoons on
a) book b) radio c) TV
6. A robot and a tablet are
a) devices b) drivers c) tools
7. The robot can me to do my homework.
a) remember b) remind c) go
8. The can clean the floor by itself.
a) phone b) computer c) robot
9. Robots can't like humans.
a) think b) help c) use
10. The tablet is games.
a) angry with b) good for c) look at

Language in Use

Coordinating Conjunctions حروف العطف

and

و

It expresses addition.

تعبّر عن الإضافة.

e.g. I have one sister **and** one brother.

but

لكن

It shows contrast.

تبيّن التناقض.

e.g. I like tennis, **but** I don't like basketball.

or

أو

It gives a choice.

تعطي خيارًا.

e.g. Do you want milk **or** juice?

Remember

Punctuation Rules قواعد علامات الترقيم

1- We put a **comma** before (**and** / **or**) for listing.نضع الفاصلة قبل (**and** و **or**) للقوائم.e.g. I have a tablet, a robot, **and** a computer.e.g. She can use the phone, the tablet, **or** the computer.2- We use a **comma** before (**but**).نستخدم الفاصلة قبل (**but**).e.g. The TV was off, **but** now it works.

Practice On Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I have a phone a robot.
a) and b) but c) or
2. I like tablets, I don't like computers.
a) and b) but c) or
3. Do you like pizza cake?
a) and b) but c) or
4. Mona Sara are friends.
a) and b) but c) or
5. Can you use a computer a tablet?
a) and b) but c) or
6. I can play football, I can't play tennis.
a) and b) but c) or
7. The tablet is good for games reading.
a) and b) but c) or
8. Do you go to school by car by bus?
a) and b) but c) or

2 Correct the underlined words. صحّح الكلمات التي تحته خط.

1. I like chocolate but cake. (.....)
2. Do you like tennis but football? (.....)
3. Sara has a phone, and she doesn't have a tablet. (.....)
4. You can have milk, juice, and yogurt. (.....)

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

computer 

computer

tablet 

tablet

phone 

phone

robot 

robot

TV 

TV

birthday

birthday

Activities

On Lesson

1

1 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 e n h
p o



.....

2 l b t
a e t



.....

3 o t r
o b



.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I like They are smart and fun.
a) robots b) TVs c) books
- I use my to send emails and play games.
a) TV b) robot c) computer
- Robots and tablets are
a) books b) devices c) cars
- I like apples mangoes.
a) and b) but c) or
- Mona doesn't use a computer a tablet.
a) and b) but c) or
- The TV was off, now it works.
a) and b) but c) or

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

car - games - computer

I love technology. I have a 1) and a tablet.
I use the computer for schoolwork. I use the tablet to watch
videos and play 2)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Samy loves technology. He wants some devices such as a robot and a tablet, but he can only choose one for his birthday. Samy visits the shop with his dad. The tablet is good for games and reading. The robot can clean his room, answer questions, and remind him to do his homework.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Samy technology.
a) likes b) hates c) makes
- Samy goes to the shop with his
a) mom b) dad c) brother

B) Answer the following questions.

- How many devices can Samy choose?
- Which device can remind Samy to do his homework?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- like - you - Do - computers - ?
- can - people - Robots - help -

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- what can the tablet do
- the TV was off but it works now.

7 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

A computer

have - schoolwork - games

.....

.....

.....

Lesson

2

Technology in Our Daily Life

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.



search

يبحث



camera

كاميرا



apps

تطبيقات



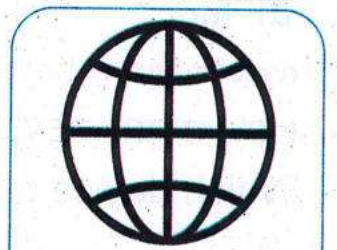
games

ألعاب



email

بريد إلكتروني



internet

الإنترنت

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

information

معلومات

after

بعد

photos - pictures

صور

a break

استراحة

clear

واضح

outside

بالخارج

message

رسالة

balanced

متوازن

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present

Past

learn

يتعلم

learned

download

يُحمّل

downloaded

take

يلتقط - يأخذ

took

Present

Past

find

يجد

found

send

يرسل

sent

forget

ينسى

forgot

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take photos	يلتقط صورًا	in the morning	في الصباح
eat lunch	يتناول الغداء	take a break	يأخذ استراحة
feel happier	يشعر بسعادة أكثر	in a balanced way	بطريقة متوازنة

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.



I **search** for information on the internet.

أنا أبحث عن المعلومات على الإنترنت.

My **camera** takes clear photos.

تلتقط الكاميرا صورًا واضحة.



I use **apps** to learn English.

أنا أستخدم التطبيقات لتعلم اللغة الإنجليزية.

We play **games** after school.

نلعب الألعاب بعد المدرسة.



I send **emails** every day.

أنا أرسل رسائل بريد إلكتروني كل يوم.

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.

The Busy Player

اللاعب المشغول

Omar plays games every day. He plays in the morning **and** in the evening. One day, he forgets to eat lunch. His sister says,



“You must take a break.” The next day, Omar plays games **but** also goes outside to play football. He feels happier and healthier.

يلعب عمر الألعاب كل يوم، في الصباح والمساء. وفي أحد الأيام نسي أن يتناول الغداء، فقالت له أخته: «يجب أن تأخذ استراحة.» في اليوم التالي، واصل عمر لعب الألعاب، لكنه يخرج أيضًا ليلعب كرة القدم. شعر حينها بسعادة وصحة أكثر.

Moral

Use technology in a balanced way.

استخدم التكنولوجيا بطريقة متوازنة.

1 Read again then answer the following questions.

اقرأ مرة أخرى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

1. What does Omar play every day?

.....

2. When does Omar play games?

.....

3. Omar forgets to eat (lunch - breakfast - snack) one day.

.....

2 Write (T) for true or (F) for false.

اكتب (T) أمام الصحيح و (F) أمام الخطأ.

1. Omar plays games only in the morning.

()

2. Omar's sister tells him to take a break.

()

3. Omar plays football the next day.

()

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

search

search

camera

camera

apps

apps

games

games

emails

emails

internet

internet



Phonics Focus

Sounds (er / ar / or)

How to say these sounds.

كيفية نطق هذه الأصوات.

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

er /ər/



computer

كمبيوتر



teacher

مُعلِّمة / مُدرسة



player

لاعب



letter

خطاب

ar /ɑ:r/



car

سيارة



park

حديقة



farm

مزرعة



guitar

جيتار



star

نجمة

Lesson (2)

or /ɔ:r/



horn

قرن



corn

ذرة



short

قصير



storm

عاصفة



fork

شوكة

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 teach__

2 f__mer

3 st__m

4 h__n

5 st__

6 play__

2 Read and complete with (er - ar - or):

اقرأ وأكمل بـ:

1 driv__

2 __m

3 sh__t

4 p__k

3 Circle the odd one.

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة.

1. star

-

car

-

short

2. letter

-

corn

-

horn

3. teacher

-

fork

-

player

Activities

On Lesson

2

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

1 lett_r

2 guit_r

3 f_rk

4 teach_r

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I use the to take a picture. **SB**

- a) internet b) camera c) games

2. I play on my phone. **SB**

- a) games b) email c) apps

3. I send a message by **SB**

- a) email b) games c) camera

4. I download new on my tablet. **SB**

- a) apps b) games c) internet

5. I use the to find information.

- a) camera b) internet c) email

6. are small programs for phones or tablets.

- a) Apps b) Emails c) Games

7. is a way to send messages online.

- a) Letter b) Player c) Email

8. I use to learn English.

- a) apps b) games c) cameras

9. We should take a when playing games.

- a) money b) break c) homework

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

technology - search - games - camera

1. I for information on the internet.
2. The is for taking photos.
3. We play after school.
4. We use in our daily life.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar plays games every day. He plays in the morning and in the evening. One day, he forgets to eat lunch. His sister says, "You must take a break." The next day, Omar plays games but also goes outside to play football. He feels happier and healthier.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Omar plays in the and in the evening.
a) morning b) noon c) night
2. Omar goes outside to play
a) tennis b) games c) football

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Omar play every day?
4. What does Omar forget to do one day?

5 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

How you use technology

apps - search - emails

Lesson

3

Using Technology Safely

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



screen

شاشة



button

زر



keyboard

لوحة مفاتيح



password

كلمة مرور



virus

فيروس

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

power	تشغيل	strangers	غرباء
secret	سر - سري	harmful	ضار
strong	قوي	unlock	يفتح
account	حساب	device	جهاز
safety	أمان	dangerous	خطير
letters	حروف	private	خاص

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
press	يضغط	pressed	share	يشارك	shared
type	يكتب - يطبع	typed	laugh	يضحك	laughed
harm	يؤذي	harmed	fix	يصلح	fixed

Definitions تعريفات

keyboard lets you type letters and numbers

لوحة المفاتيح: تتيح لك كتابة الحروف والأرقام

screen shows pictures, videos, and text

الشاشة: تعرض الصور ومقاطع الفيديو والنصوص

virus harmful program that can damage your computer

الفيروس: برنامج ضار يمكن أن يلحق الضرر بجهاز الحاسوب

password letters and numbers you type to unlock something

كلمة المرور: حروف وأرقام تكتبها لفتح شيء ما

button small part you press to make something work

الزر: جزء صغير تضغط عليه لجعل شيء يعمل

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look at	ينظر إلى	for too long	لفترة طويلة جدًا
turn on	يشغل	look great	يبدو رائعًا
get into	يدخل	Let's + (inf.)	هيا بنا
ask for	يطلب	get a virus	يصاب بفيروس

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.

Don't look at the **screen** for too long.

لا تنظر إلى الشاشة لفترة طويلة.

Press the power **button** to turn on a device.

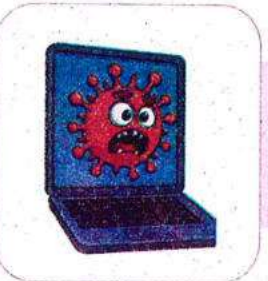
اضغط على زر التشغيل لتشغيل الجهاز.

I type with the **keyboard**.

اكتب باستخدام لوحة المفاتيح.

My **password** is secret.

كلمة المرور الخاصة بي سرية.

A **virus** can harm your computer.

الفيروس يمكن أن يضر جهاز الحاسب.

Listen and read the dialog.

استمع واقرأ الحوار.

Amina : Wow! My new computer looks great.
The **screen** is so big!

واو! يبدو حاسوبي الجديد رائعًا. الشاشة كبيرة جدًا!

Marwa : Yes! And you have a new **keyboard** too.

نعم! ولديك لوحة مفاتيح جديدة أيضًا.

Amina : I need to make a strong **password** so no one can get into my **account**.

أحتاج إلى إنشاء كلمة مرور قوية حتى لا يتمكن أحد من الدخول إلى حسابي.

Marwa : That's a good idea. A good password has numbers and letters.

هذه فكرة جيدة. كلمة المرور الجيدة تحتوي على أرقام وحروف.

Amina : You're right. I will do that.

أنت محقة. سأفعل ذلك.

Marwa : And remember not to share your password with strangers.

وتذكرني ألا تشاركي كلمة مرورك مع الغرباء.

Amina : Thank you, Marwa. Let's play a game on it.

شكرًا لك يا مروة. هيا نلعب لعبة عليه.



Answer the following questions.

1. Why does Amina want to make a strong password?

.....

2. What does Marwa say a good password should have?

.....

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.

The Secret Password

Laila's friend asks for her password. She says, "No, that's private." Her friend laughs and says it's not important. The next day, her friend's computer gets a virus from a game. Laila helps her fix it and shows how to make a strong password. Her friend says, "I will never share my password again."



طلبت صديقة ليلي منها أن تخبرها بكلمة المرور، لكن ليلي رفضت وقالت إن ذلك أمر خاص بها، بينما ضحكت صديقتها وتقول إن الموضوع بسيط وغير مهم. وفي اليوم التالي، أصيب جهاز الصديقة بفيروس بسبب لعبة، فساعدتها ليلي في إصلاحه وشرحت لها طريقة اختيار كلمة مرور قوية، فقالت صديقتها إنها لن تشارك كلمة المرور مع أي أحد مرة أخرى.

Moral

Keep your information private.

احتفظ بمعلوماتك بشكل خاص.

1 Read again, then write (T) for true or (F) for false.

1. Laila gave her password to her friend. ()
2. The virus came from a game. ()
3. Laila helped her friend fix the problem. ()
4. Laila will share her password again. ()

2 Answer the following questions.

1. What did Laila's friend ask for?

.....

2. How did the friend's computer get a virus?

.....

Practice On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Press the power to turn on a device. **SB** 
 - a) virus
 - b) button
 - c) keyboard
2. A protects online accounts. **SB** 
 - a) password
 - b) virus
 - c) screen
3. A can harm your computer. **SB** 
 - a) screen
 - b) virus
 - c) keyboard
4. It is not good to look at the for long. **SB** 
 - a) button
 - b) screen
 - c) keyboard
5. I use a for typing. **SB** 
 - a) button
 - b) screen
 - c) keyboard
6. Omar's computer got a from a game.
 - a) camera
 - b) virus
 - c) private
7. A good has numbers and letters.
 - a) password
 - b) screen
 - c) virus
8. Don't your password with strangers.
 - a) share
 - b) take
 - c) play
9. I with the keyboard.
 - a) look
 - b) ride
 - c) type
10. Press the power button to a device.
 - a) turn on
 - b) turn into
 - c) make

Language in use

Simple Future المستقبل البسيط

Usage

الاستخدام

We use **will / will not** to say something we **will do** or **will not do** in the future. نستخدم **will / will not** لنقول أننا سنفعل أو لن نفعل شيئاً في المستقبل.

Form

التكوين

Subject + will + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

- I **will play** games after school.

Negative

النفي

Subject + will not + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

- I **will not share** my password.

Keywords

الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow

غداً

next (week)

(الأسبوع) القادم

Note

will not = won't

- I **won't watch** TV.

Practice On Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I do my homework.
a) will b) am c) doesn't
2. They share their password with anyone.
a) will b) won't c) aren't
3. He visit his grandparents tomorrow.
a) will b) didn't c) is
4. We won't football.
a) play b) played c) plays
5. I help my mom in the kitchen.
a) will b) won't c) isn't
6. She will hard for her exams.
a) studies b) study c) studying

2 Correct the underlined words. صحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. Omar will share his password. (.....)
2. I will using my phone. (.....)
3. She won't study hard for her next exam. (.....)
4. They go to the beach tomorrow. (.....)
5. I will not respect my parents. (.....)

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

screen

screen

button

button

keyboard

keyboard

password

password

virus

virus

account

account

Activities

On Lesson

3

1 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة.

1

y o e
r d
k a b

2

r s
e n
c e

3

i v
s
u r

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Don't look at the for too long.
 a) virus b) game c) screen
2. You must keep your secret.
 a) password b) screen c) button
3. A can harm your computer.
 a) app b) virus c) tablet
4. I to school tomorrow.
 a) didn't go b) will go c) are going
5. Mom go shopping. She is sick.
 a) won't b) will c) can
6. I will football tomorrow.
 a) play b) plays c) playing
7. My dad share his password.
 a) has b) won't c) is

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

screen - share - password

My new computer looks great. The 1)..... is so big.
I need to make a strong password so no one can get into my
account. I won't 2)..... my password with anyone.

4 Read and match.

اقرأ و صل.

1) keyboard

a) small part you press to
make something work

2) virus

b) lets you type letters and numbers

3) button

c) can harm your computer

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. is - My - secret - password - .

.....

2. type - the keyboard - I - with - .

.....

3. your - Keep - password - secret - .

.....

4. share - I - my - won't - password - .

.....

- 6 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Adam takes a funny photo of his friend. He wants to share it online. His friend says, "Please, don't share it." Adam says, "Okay, I understand." The next day, another boy shares a photo without asking. His friend feels sad. Adam tells him, "You should always ask first." The boy says, "You are right. I won't do that again."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Adam takes a photo of his friend.
a) funny b) good c) sad
- Adam should always first.
a) write b) ask c) take

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does Adam want to do with the photo?
- How does his friend feel about the photo?

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- i will help my friend

.....

- what will you do

.....

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Staying safe online

password - screen - share

.....

.....

.....

Lesson

4

Technology in the Future

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.



drone

طائرة بدون طيار



robot

إنسان آلي



smart home

بيت ذكي



internet

الإنترنت

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

amazing

مذهل

door

باب

toy drone

طائرة لعبة - بدون طيار

voice

صوت

dream

حلم

dark

مظلم

lights

أنوار - أضواء

energy

طاقة

warm

دافئ

delivery

توصيل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present

Past

understand

يفهم

understood

Present

Past

order

يطلب

ordered

fly

يطير

flew

drop

تسقط

dropped

save

ينقذ

saved

warm

يدفئ

warmed

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

watch a video

يشاهد فيديو

That's cool!

هذا رائع!

Me too!

وأنا أيضًا!

work with

يعمل بـ

warm bread

خبز دافئ

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.



A **drone** can take photos from the sky.

تستطيع الطائرة بدون طيار أن تلتقط صورًا من السماء.

My **smart home** turns on the lights.

بيتي الذكي يُشغّل الأضواء.



A **robot** can help clean my room.

يستطيع الروبوت أن يساعد في تنظيف غرفتي.

I learn a lot of things from the **internet**.

أتعلم أشياء كثيرة من الإنترنت.



Read the dialog and act it out.

اقرأ الحوار وقم بتمثيله.

Hassan : Hi, Ahmed! What are you doing?

مرحبًا يا أحمد! ماذا تفعل؟

Ahmed : I'm watching a video about drones.

أشاهد فيديو عن الطائرات بدون طيار.

Hassan : Amazing! What does it do?

رائع! ماذا تفعل هذه الطائرة؟

Ahmed : It flies and takes photos from the sky.

هي تطير وتلتقط صورًا من السماء.

Hassan : That's so cool!

هذا رائع جدًا!

Ahmed : I like to have a toy drone one day.

أحب أن أمتلك طائرة لعبة بدون طيار يومًا ما.

Hassan : My dream is to have a smart home one day.

حلمي هو أن أمتلك بيتًا ذكيًا يومًا ما.

Ahmed : Me too! The lights, TV, and doors can work with just your voice.

وأنا أيضًا! يمكن أن تعمل الأضواء والتلفاز والأبواب بصوتك فقط.

Read again, then choose the correct answer. **SB**

اقرأ مرة أخرى، واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The drone can
a) fly and take photos b) cook food
2. Ahmed would like to have a
a) toy drone b) smart home
3. Hassan's dream is to have a
a) toy drone b) smart home
4. In a smart home, things can work with
a) your hands b) your voice

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

The Drone Delivery

In 2050, Karim orders lunch on his smartphone. A drone flies to his window and drops the food. The smart home warms the food for him.



Later, Karim visits his grandmother. She has no drone, **but** she has warm bread and a big smile. Karim eats lunch with her and says, "Technology is fast, **but** family is the best."

في عام 2050 يطلب كريم الغداء من هاتفه الذكي، فتطير طائرة بدون طيار إلى نافذته وتُسقط الطعام، ويقوم البيت الذكي بتسخين الطعام له. بعد ذلك يزور كريم جدته، وليس لديها طائرة بدون طيار، لكنها تملك خبزاً دافئاً وابتسامة كبيرة. يأكل كريم الغداء معها ويقول: «التكنولوجيا سريعة، لكن العائلة هي الأفضل».

Moral

Technology is fast, but family is the best.

التكنولوجيا سريعة، لكن العائلة هي الأفضل.

Trace and write.

drone

drone

smart home

smart home

technology

technology

robot

robot

internet

internet

smartphone

smartphone

Activities

On Lesson

4

1 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 o e r
d n



.....

2 b b r
t o o



.....

3 e t i
n e
n r t



.....

2 Read and match.

اقرأ و صل.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1) A robot | a) can fly and take photos. |
| 2) The internet | b) turns on the lights. |
| 3) A drone | c) helps me do my homework. |
| 4) A smart home | d) helps me clean my house. |

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I flew my toy in the park.
a) drone b) car c) train
- Mom can make bread.
a) cold b) warm c) sunny
- My brother plays games on the
a) book b) TV c) internet
- A can talk and understand people.
a) robot b) tablet c) drone
- I can lunch on my smart phone.
a) take b) order c) make
- I learn a lot of things from the
a) desk b) drone c) internet

Lesson (4)

4 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

have - drones - photos

- Hassan : Hi Ahmed! What are you doing?
Ahmed : I am watching a video about 1).....
Hassan : Amazing! What does it do?
Ahmed : It flies and takes 2)..... from the sky.
Hassan : That's so cool!
Ahmed : I like to have a toy drone one day.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

In 2050, Karim orders lunch on his smartphone. A drone flies to his window and drops the food. The smart home warms the food for him. Later, Karim visits his grandmother. She has no drone, but she has warm bread and a big smile. Karim eats lunch with her and says, "Technology is fast, but family is the best."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Karim orders lunch on his smartphone in
a) 2020 b) 2025 c) 2050
2. Karim eats lunch with
a) grandmother b) mother c) grandfather

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the drone do?

.....

4. What is the moral of the text?

.....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. play - will - I - tomorrow - football - .



2. my - I - won't - share - password - .



3. help - I - will - you - homework - with - the - .



4. play - won't - games - I - night - at - .



7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. i won't share my password

2. what are you doing

8 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about:

اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Technology in the future

smart home - robot - drone

Review On Unit

4

Vocabulary

Lesson (1)

computer	كمبيوتر
tablet	تابلت
phone	تليفون
robot	إنسان آلي
TV	تلفاز

Lesson (3)

screen	شاشة
button	زر
keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح
password	كلمة مرور
virus	فيروس

Lesson (2)

search	يبحث
camera	كاميرا
apps	تطبيقات
games	ألعاب
email	بريد إلكتروني

Lesson (4)

drone	طائرة بدون طيار
smart home	بيت ذكي
internet	الإنترنت
smartphone	هاتف ذكي
technology	تكنولوجيا

Phonics

er /ər/	computer	-	teacher	-	player
ar /ɑːr/	car	-	star	-	guitar
or /ɔːr/	corn	-	horn	-	storm

Language

and

e.g. I have a phone **and** a tablet.

but

e.g. I like tennis, **but** I don't like football.

or

e.g. Do you want milk **or** juice?

Writing Corner

- ✎ Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Smart Technology

I have a phone and a tablet. I use my phone to talk to friends. I play games on my tablet.

Technology in daily life

I use apps to learn English. I search for information on the internet. I play games on my tablet.

How to stay safe online

To be safe online, you must have a strong password. Don't look at the screen for too long. Never share your password with anyone.

Technology in the future

In the future, my smart home will turn on the lights. A robot can help clean my room. A drone will deliver food to our homes.

Dictation On Unit

4

Lesson (1)	humans	كمبيوتر
	play games	تابلت
	floor	إنسان آلي
	devices	تلفاز

Lesson (2)	search	كاميرا
	learn	ألعاب
	send	تطبيقات
	clear	بريد إلكتروني

Lesson (3)	virus	شاشة
	secret	زور
	account	لوحة المفاتيح
	private	كلمة المرور

Lesson (4)	fly	لعبة
	voice	طائرة بدون طيار
	energy	بيت ذكي
	clean	بالتقط صورًا

Test Based On Unit 4

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

- 1 st_rm 2 f_rmer 3 teach_r 4 st_r

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I use the to take pictures.
a) computer b) camera c) email
- We should use technology in a way.
a) balanced b) wrong c) slow
- You must keep your password
a) open b) small c) secret
- Do you like phones tablets?
a) and b) but c) or
- I play games at night.
a) doesn't b) won't c) isn't
- I have one sister one brother.
a) and b) but c) or

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

apps - computer - password

My dad bought me a new 1) for my birthday.
The screen is very big. I made a strong 2) I use it to
play games and to do my homework.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1

b t o o r



.....

2

t u b n t o



.....

3

r n d e o



.....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Laila's friend asks for her password. She says, "No, that's private." Her friend laughs and says it's not important. The next day, her friend's computer gets a virus from a game. Laila helps her fix it and shows how to make a strong password. Her friend says, "I will never share my password again."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Laila's password is
 a) strong b) weak c) bad
2. Her friend's computer got a
 a) game b) virus c) cold

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Laila's friend ask for?
4. What did Laila teach her friend?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. help - I - you - will - .

2. does - a drone - What - do - ?

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. omar will call me tomorrow
2. where will you play games

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Using technology

power button - keyboard - camera

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I have a and a tablet.
 a) phone b) TV c) robot
2. I use the phone to talk to
 a) boys b) friends c) family
3. I play on the tablet.
 a) tennis b) football c) games

2 Fill in the missing letter.

أكمل الحرف الناقص.

- 1 f_rmer 2 st_rm 3 c_rn 4 p_rk

3 Fill in the missing letter.

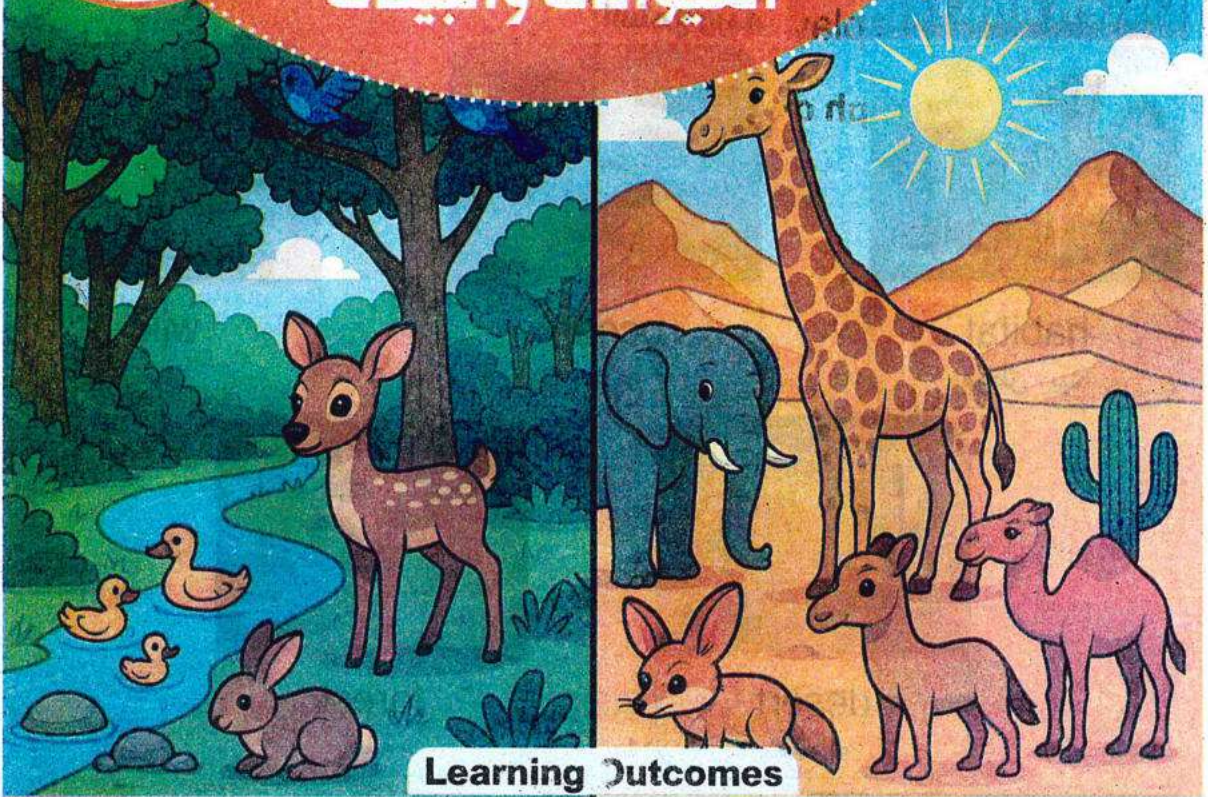
أكمل الحرف الناقص.

- 1 scr_en 2 sh_rt 3 c_r 4 dr_ne

Unit 5

Animals and Habitats

الحيوانات والبيئات



Learning Outcomes

Name habitats and animal body parts clearly.

يستطيع التلميذ وصف أجزاء جسم الحيوانات بوضوح.

Use adjectives to describe animals and their homes in short sentences.

Speaking

يستخدم الصفات لوصف الحيوانات ومواطنها في جمل قصيرة.

Discuss what different animals "can/can't" do.

يتناقش ما تستطيع الحيوانات فعله وما لا تستطيع فعله.

Pronounce the patterns of "oo" and "ow" in short words accurately.

ينطق أنماط «oo» و «ow» في كلمات قصيرة بدقة.

Identify key vocabulary about habitats, animals, and their features.

Reading

يتعرف على المفردات الأساسية المتعلقة بالمواطن، والحيوانات، وخصائصها.

Recognize specific information about where animals live and what they can do.

يتعرف على معلومات محددة حول أماكن عيش الحيوانات وما يمكنها فعله.

Recognize key words about animals and their habitats in short spoken texts.

Listening

يتعرف على الكلمات الرئيسية حول الحيوانات ومواطنها في نصوص مسموعة قصيرة.

Recognize supporting details about animals and their habitats in short spoken texts.

يتعرف على التفاصيل الداعمة حول الحيوانات ومواطنها في نصوص منطوقة قصيرة.

Respond to oral instructions for sorting animals.

يستجيب للتعليمات الشفهية الخاصة بتصنيف الحيوانات.

Distinguish between the patterns of "oo" and "ow" when listened to.

يُميِّز بين أنماط «oo» و «ow» عند الاستماع.

Label pictures of animals and habitats with correct vocabulary.

يُسمي صور الحيوانات ومواطنها باستخدام المفردات الصحيحة.

Use "can / can't" to write about animals abilities.

يستخدم «can / can't» لكتابة جمل عن قدرات الحيوانات.

Writing

Describe animals and their habitats, using appropriate adjectives.

يصف الحيوانات ومواطنها باستخدام الصفات المناسبة.

Write sentences about protecting nature, animals, and their homes.

يكتب جملًا عن حماية الطبيعة، والحيوانات، وبيئاتها.

Lesson

1

Discovering Habitats

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



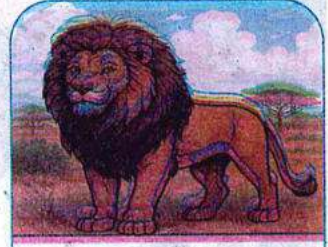
habitat

موطن - بيئة



ocean

محيط



wild

بري



desert

صحراء



forest

غابة

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

home

موطن

dolphin

دولفين

example

مثال

fox

ثعلب

nature

طبيعة

shade

ظل

lizard

سحلية

world

العالم

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present

Past

live

يعيش

live^d

own

يمتلك

own^{ed}

discover

يكتشف

discover^{ed}

Present

Past

survive

يبقى على قيد الحياة

survive^d

explore

يستكشف

explore^d

wander

يتجول

wander^{ed}

Definitions تعريفات

ocean	a big area of salty water	محيط: مساحة كبيرة من المياه المالحة
desert	a hot, sandy place with little water	صحراء: مكان حار رملي به قليل من الماء
forest	a place with many trees	غابة: مكان به الكثير من الأشجار
habitat	is where animals live	موطن: هو المكان الذي تعيش فيه الحيوانات
wild	animals that live in nature and not owned by people	بري: الحيوانات التي تعيش في الطبيعة وليست مملوكة للناس

Adjectives صفات

hot	حار	sandy	رملي
cool	بارد	salty	مالح
shady	ظليل - مظلل	big	كبير
tall	طويل	deep	عميق
huge	ضخم	dry	جاف
curious	فضولي	perfect	مثالي

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

full of	مملوء بـ	with little water	بها ماء قليل
fresh water	ماء عذب	its own home	موطنه الخاص
a habitat for animals	موطن للحيوانات	by the ocean	بجانب المحيط
belong to	ينتمي إلى	that is just right	يناسبه تمامًا

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Teacher : Good morning! Today, we will talk about animals and their homes. What is a home for an animal?

صباح الخير! اليوم سنتحدث عن الحيوانات ومواطنها.

ما هو الموطن بالنسبة للحيوان؟



Mourad : Is it where animals live?

هل هو المكان الذي تعيش فيه الحيوانات؟

Teacher : Yes! A **habitat** is where animals live.

نعم! الموطن هو المكان الذي تعيش فيه الحيوانات.

Karma : Can you give us an example?

هل يمكنك أن تعطينا مثالاً؟

Teacher : A **forest** has tall trees. Many animals live there.

الغابة فيها أشجار طويلة، يعيش فيها كثير من الحيوانات.

Mourad : What does "wild" mean?

ما معنى كلمة «wild» (بري)؟

Teacher : "Wild" means animals that live in nature and not owned by people.

«بري» تعني الحيوانات التي تعيش في الطبيعة وليست مملوكة للناس.

Mourad : What about the **ocean**?

وماذا عن المحيط؟

Teacher : The **ocean** is big and salty.

المحيط كبير ومالح.

Karma : Lizards live in the **desert**.

السحالي تعيش في الصحراء.

Teacher : Yes! Let's **discover** more about animals and their homes.

نعم! هيا نكتشف المزيد عن الحيوانات ومواطنها.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A/An is a big area of salty water.

a) forest

b) ocean

c) desert

2. Where do lizards live? They live in the

a) desert

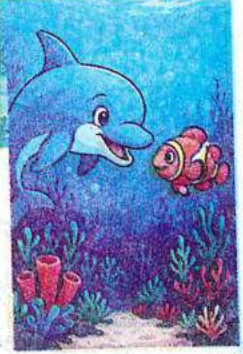
b) car

c) school

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

The world is full of amazing places where animals live. Each animal has a special home, called a habitat, that helps it survive. A hot, sandy place with little water is a desert. A cool, shady place with lots of trees is a forest. The big, blue ocean is a home for fish and dolphins.



العالم مملوء بالاماكن المدهشة التي تعيش فيها الحيوانات، ولكل حيوان موطن خاص يُسمى موطنًا، يساعد على البقاء على قيد الحياة. المكان الحار الرمل الذي به ماء قليل هو الصحراء، والمكان البارد الظليل الذي فيه كثير من الأشجار هو الغابة، أما المحيط الأزرق الكبير فهو موطن الأسماك والدلافين.

Read again, then choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.
اقرأ مرة أخرى ثم اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- What is a hot, sandy place with little water called?
a) an ocean b) a forest c) a desert
- What is a habitat?
a) a type of tree b) a big, blue place
c) a special home for an animal
- Each animal has a special home that helps it
a) survive b) discover c) talk

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.

The Curious Fox

الثعلب الفضولي

Foxy the fox loved to explore. One day, he wandered out of his forest habitat. He saw a huge, blue ocean.

The salty water was so different from the fresh water in his forest. He saw a dry, sandy desert with no trees.

Foxy realized that his own forest, with its cool shade and tall trees, was the perfect place for him. He learned that every animal has a special home that is just right.



كان فوكسي الثعلب يحب الاستكشاف كثيرًا وفي أحد الأيام خرج يتجول خارج موطنه في الغابة، فرأى محيطًا أزرق ضخماً، وكان الماء المالح مختلفاً جداً عن الماء العذب في غابته، ثم رأى صحراء جافة رملية لا توجد فيها أشجار، فأدرك أن غابته، بما فيها من ظل بارد وأشجار طويلة، هي المكان الأمثل له، وتعلم أن كل حيوان له موطن خاص يناسبه تمامًا.

Moral

Every animal belongs to its own special home.

كل حيوان ينتمي إلى موطنه الخاص والمميز.

Read again then, choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اقرأ مرة أخرى ثم اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Where did Foxy the fox live?
a) In the desert b) In the forest c) By the ocean
- What did Foxy see that was very different from his forest?
a) A river b) A desert c) A huge, blue ocean
- The forest has shade.
a) cool b) hot c) salty
- Foxy learned that every animal has a special
a) tree b) ocean c) home

Practice On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A is where animals live.
a) river b) wild c) habitat
2. The is big and salty.
a) ocean b) desert c) forest
3. Lizards live in the
a) ocean b) canal c) desert
4. A is a place with many trees.
a) forest b) school c) habitat
5. A desert is a , sandy place.
a) cool b) hot c) rainy
6. Dolphins live in the
a) desert b) forest c) ocean
7. means animals that live in nature and not owned by people.
a) Habitat b) Wild c) Ocean
8. live in the desert.
a) Lizards b) Whales c) Dolphins
9. I want to more about animals and their homes.
a) live b) survive c) discover
10. Each animal has a special home that helps it
a) discover b) survive c) give
11. The ocean is big and
a) salty b) fresh c) wild



Phonics Focus

The /u:/ and /ʊ/ Sounds

The letters "oo" can be tricky because they can sound different, long and short.

يمكن أن تكون الحروف «oo» محيرة، لأنها قد تُنطق بأصوات مختلفة، أحيانًا طويلة وأحيانًا قصيرة.

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Long "oo" /u:/



moon

قمر



zoo

حديقة الحيوان



pool

حمام سباحة



food

طعام

short "oo" /ʊ/



book

كتاب



foot

قدم



look

ينظر



cook

يطبخ



wood

خشب



hook

خطاف

Lesson (1)

- Read and complete in the right column. اقرأ وأكمل في العمود الصحيح.

book - moon - food - wood - pool - hook

Long /u:/

Short /ʊ/

Language in Use

Adjectives الصفات

Adjectives are words that describe nouns (people, places, or things).

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء (أشخاص أو أماكن أو أشياء).

تأتي الصفة قبل الاسم الموصوف.



a **hot** desert



a **wild** kangaroo



a **deep** ocean



a **tall** forest

ويمكن أن تأتي في النهاية بعد (am - is - are)



The desert is **hot**.



The ocean is **deep**.

Practice On Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The desert is
 a) hot b) tall c) small
2. The ocean is
 a) deep b) dry c) white
3. The lion is
 a) hot b) wild c) nice
4. The trees in the forest are
 a) tall b) deep c) hot
5. It is a elephant.
 a) tiny b) big c) blue
6. Ali is
 a) salty b) short c) sandy
7. It is a forest.
 a) shady b) deep c) sun
8. The water in the ocean is
 a) sugar b) salty c) black
9. It is a tiger.
 a) wild b) kind c) hot

2 Correct the underlined words.

صَحِّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. It is a house big.
 (.....)
2. The desert is deep.
 (.....)
3. The fox is wide.
 (.....)
4. He saw a ocean huge.
 (.....)

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

habitat



habitat

ocean



ocean

wild



wild

desert



desert

forest



forest

animals



animals

Activities

On Lesson

1

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 m__n

2 c__k

3 p__l

4 w__d

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A/An is a big area of salty water.

a) river

b) ocean

c) school

2. Each animal belongs to its own home.

a) special

b) club

c) sandy

3. The is wild.

a) fish

b) lion

c) computer

4. It's a cool, forest.

a) dry

b) shady

c) deep

5. The desert is hot and

a) blue

b) tall

c) sandy

6. It is a

a) tall tree

b) tree tall

c) tree big

3 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

forest - desert - animals

Omar : What is a habitat?

Adam : It is where 1) live.

Omar : Can you give me an example?

Adam : A 2) has tall trees.

Omar : What about the ocean?

Adam : It is big and salty.

Lesson (1)

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة.

1

e o
n
c a



.....

2

s f
e t
r o



.....

3

o w
d o



.....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The world is full of amazing places where animals live. Each animal has a special home, called a habitat, that helps it survive. A hot, sandy place with little water is a desert. A cool, shady place with lots of trees is a forest. The big, blue ocean is a home for fish and dolphins.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- The world is full of places.
a) small b) bad c) amazing
- The desert is
a) hot b) cold c) shady

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is a habitat?
- Where do dolphins live?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- what is a desert
- the moon is in the sky

7 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

The camel

desert - live - strong

.....

.....

.....

Lesson

2

Describing Animals

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.



fur

فرو



feathers

ريش



hoof

حافر



nest

عش



paw

كف



claws

مخالب



tail

ذيل

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

bear	دب	branches	فروع الشجر
feet	أقدام	safe	آمن
squirrel	سنجاب	leaves	أوراق الشجر
busy	مشغول	jungle	أدغال
coat	طبقة - فرو	flies	ذباب

Adjectives صفات

furry	فروي - ذو فراء	slow	بطيء
sharp	حاد	strong	قوي
fluffy	رقيق	bushy	كثيف
soft	ناعم	cozy	دافئ - مريح

Lesson (2)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

climb

يتسلق

climbed

gather

يجمع

gathered

Present

Past

build

يبني

built

have

لديه - يمتلك

had

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

body parts

أجزاء الجسم

strong legs

أرجل قوية

sharp claws

مخالب حادة

fluffy feathers

ريش ناعم

high in a tree

عاليًا في الشجرة

bushy tail

ذيل كثيف

push away

يتردد - يبعد

on its feet

على قدميه

Look and read.

اقرأ وانظر.

Animals have different body parts that help them live. A **furry** bear has big **paws** and **sharp claws**. A bird has soft **feathers** and a long tail. The bird builds its nest high in a tree. A horse has **hooves** on its feet and a tail to **push away** flies. Their body parts help them stay safe in their habitats.



للحيوانات أعضاء جسم مختلفة تساعد على العيش. فالدب ذو الفراء الكثيف له كفوف كبيرة ومخالب حادة، والطائر له ريش ناعم وذيل طويل، ويبني عشه عاليًا على شجرة. أما الحصان فله حوافر في أقدامه وذيل يُبعد به الذباب. تساعد أعضاء أجسامهم على البقاء آمنين في مواطنهم الطبيعية.

- Read again, then answer the following questions.

1. What helps animals live?
2. What does a bear have on its feet?
3. Where does a bird build its nest?
4. What does a horse use its tail for?

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

The Squirrel's Home

Squeaky the squirrel was very busy. He had a furry coat and a long, **bushy** tail. He used his sharp claws to climb up the tall tree. High in the **branches**, he had a **cozy** nest of leaves. He **gathered** nuts to keep his family safe. He was so happy with his home.



كان سكويكي السنجاب مشغولاً جداً، وكان لديه فراء ناعم وذيل طويل كثيف، واستخدم مخالبه الحادة ليتسلق الشجرة الطويلة، وفي أعالي الأغصان كان لديه عش دافئ من أوراق الشجر، وجمع المكسرات ليُبقى عائلته في أمان، وكان سعيداً جداً ببيته.

Read again, then answer the following questions.

- What is Squeaky's nest made of?
 - Sticks
 - Leaves
 - Mud
- How does Squeaky feel about his home?
 - Sad
 - Happy
 - Afraid

Read and learn.



It's a furry bear. It has big paws and sharp claws.

إنه دب ذو فراء كثيف، وله كفوف كبيرة ومخالب حادة.



The tiger has sharp claws and strong legs. It lives in the jungle.

للنمر مخالب حادة وأرجل قوية، وهو يعيش في الغابة.

Lesson (2)



A horse has hooves on its feet. It has a long tail.

للحصان حوافر في أقدامه، وله ذيل طويل.



A squirrel has a furry coat and a long, bushy tail. It also has sharp claws.

للسنجاب فراء ناعم وذيل طويل كثيف، وله أيضًا مخالب حادة.



A bird has soft feathers and lives in a nest.

للطائر ريش ناعم ويعيش في عش.



A cat has fur and walks on its paws.

للقط فراء ويمشي على كفوفه.



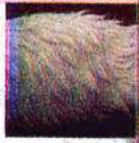
The panda is furry and cute. It lives in the forest.

الباندا مكسوة بالفراء ولطيفة، وهي تعيش في الغابة.

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

fur



fur

feathers



feathers

hoof



hoof

nest



nest

paw



paw

claws



claws

tail



tail

fluffy

fluffy

sharp

sharp

1 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1

r u
 f



2

f h
 o o



3

t n
 e s



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Birds have to help them fly.
 a) claws b) fur c) feathers
2. A horse has on its feet.
 a) paws b) hooves c) nests
3. A bird's home is a
 a) nest b) house c) bowl
4. Cats have
 a) feathers b) wings c) fur
5. The bear has claws.
 a) sharp b) fluffy c) soft
6. The elephant has legs.
 a) hot b) strong c) deep
7. A bird has feathers.
 a) fluffy b) slow c) wild

8. A squirrel has a tail.

- a) sharp b) bushy c) small

9. A has a long tail.

- a) cat b) bird c) horse

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

jungle - sharp - nest

A bird has feathers and lives in a 1) The tiger has 2) claws and lives in the jungle.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Squeaky the squirrel was very busy. He had a furry coat and a long, bushy tail. He used his sharp claws to climb up the tall tree. High in the branches, he had a cozy nest of leaves. He gathered nuts to keep his family safe. He was so happy with his home.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. The squirrel was

- a) sad b) busy c) scary

2. He was with his home.

- a) happy b) angry c) big

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did the squirrel have?

.....

4. What's the nest made of?

.....

Lesson (2)

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. bear - A furry - big - has - paws - .

2. has - soft - A bird - feathers - .

3. strong - The horse - has - legs - .

4. panda - in - The - the forest - lives - .

5. does - live - Where - the bear - ?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. a bird has feathers

2. where do animals live

7 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

The bear

furry - paws - claws - forest

Lesson

3

What Can Animals Do?

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



shelter

مأوى



survive

يبقى على قيد الحياة



crawl

يزحف



fly

يطير



swim

يسبح

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

cave

كهف

worried

قلق

warm

دافئ

shaky

مهتزة - مهزوزة

ground

أرض

owl

بومة

turtle

سلحفاة (برمائية)

abilities

قدرات

snake

ثعبان

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present

Past

need

يحتاج

needed

come

يأتي

came

find

يجد

found

Present

Past

fly

يطير

flew

swim

يسبح

swam

keep

يحافظ على

kept

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

I see!

فهمت! stay alive

يبقى على قيد الحياة

in the air

في الهواء fly away

يطير بعيداً

Definitions تعريفات

shelter a safe place where animals stay

مأوى: مكان آمن تبقى فيه الحيوانات

survive to stay alive

يعيش: يبقى على قيد الحياة

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.

Noha : Wow! Look at the bear. Where does it live?

واو! انظري إلى الدب، أين يعيش؟

Maya : The bear lives in a cave.

يعيش الدب في كهف.

Noha : Oh, so the cave is its home?

أوه، إذن الكهف هو بيته؟

Maya : Yes! That's called a shelter.

نعم! وهذا يُسمى مأوى.

Noha : Shelter? What's that?

مأوى؟ ما هذا؟

Maya : A shelter is a safe place where animals stay. It keeps them warm and dry.

المأوى هو مكان آمن تبقى فيه الحيوانات، فهو يُبقيها دافئة وجافة.

Noha : I see! Why do animals need shelter?

فهمت! ولماذا تحتاج الحيوانات إلى المأوى؟

Maya : To survive!

لكي تنجو!

Noha : Survive?

تنجو؟

Maya : That means to stay alive. Animals need food, water, and shelter to survive.

نعم، أي تبقى على قيد الحياة. فالحيوانات تحتاج إلى الطعام والماء والمأوى لتبقى على قيد الحياة.



Listen and read.

انظر واقرأ.

The Helpful Owl

A little owl was worried. The storm was coming, and its nest was in a **shaky** tree. An old owl told him, "You can fly, little one. You can find a better shelter." The little owl **flew away**. He found a big cave and stayed safe inside. His ability to fly saved him.



كان هناك طائر بومة صغير يشعر بالقلق لأن العاصفة كانت قادمة، وكان عُشّه على شجرة مهتزة، فقالت له بومة عجوز: «يمكنك أن تطير أيها الصغير، ويمكنك أن تجد مأوى أفضل»، فطار طائر البومة الصغير بعيداً ووجد كهفاً كبيراً وبقي آمناً بداخله، وقد أنقذه قدرته على الطيران.

Moral

Use your abilities to stay safe and help others.

استخدم قدراتك لتبقى آمناً وتساعد الآخرين.

1 Read again, then write (T) for true or (F) for false.

1. The little owl could not fly. ()
2. The little owl found a big cave. ()
3. The storm never came. ()
4. The little owl's wings helped him stay safe. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. The little owl was
 a) worried b) sad c) short
2. The nest was in a shaky
 a) cave b) tree c) tail
3. The little owl found a big
 a) sea b) desert c) cave



Phonics Focus

The long and short "ow"

The letters **ow** can be tricky because they can sound different.

قد تكون الحروف «ow» صعبة بعض الشيء، لأنها يمكن أن تُنطق بأصواتٍ مختلفة.

Long "ow" /ou/



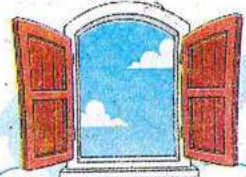
snow

ثلج / جليد



grow

يزرع



window

نافذة



yellow

أصفر



throw

يرمي



show

عرض

Short "ow" /au/



cow

بقرة



owl

بومة

NOW

now

الآن



brown

بني



crown

تاج



town

مدينة صغيرة

Practice On Phonics

1 Listen and circle the odd one out. استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة.

- | | | | | |
|----------|---|------|---|--------|
| 1. snow | - | grow | - | cow |
| 2. brown | - | how | - | slow |
| 3. now | - | owl | - | window |
| 4. throw | - | know | - | now |

2 Sort the words by the sound of "ow". صنف الكلمات حسب الصوت «ow».

snow - grow - window - throw - cow - owl - now

Long ow: /oʊ/	Short ow: /aʊ/

3 Reorder the letters to make a word. أعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 o n s w  _____	2 w g r o  _____	3 d o i w w n  _____
4 o y l l w e  _____	5 w t n o  _____	6 w o r b n  _____

Language in Use

Can & Can't

can

يستطيع

We use **can** to talk about abilities.

نستخدم «can» للحديث عن القدرة.

can + inf. (مصدر الفعل)



A bird **can** fly.



I **can** ride a bike.

can't

لا يستطيع

We use **cannot / can't** to talk about things you are not able to do.

نستخدم «cannot / can't» للحديث عن الأشياء التي لا تستطيع القيام بها.

can't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)



A fish **can't** fly.



I **can't** ride a bike.

Note

can't = cannot

Practice On Language

1 Look, read, and complete with (can or can't).



- A snake crawl.

- A snake fly.

- A penguin fly.

- A penguin swim.

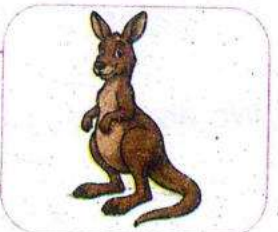


- A tiger run.

- A tiger crawl.

- A kangaroo jump.

- A kangaroo swim.



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A turtle swim in the water.

a) can

b) can't

c) don't

2. A bird crawl.

a) can

b) can't

c) is

3. Mom cook delicious food.

a) can

b) can't

c) are

4. He can't a car.

a) drives

b) driving

c) drive

Trace and write.

تتبع واكتب.

shelter



shelter

survive



survive

crawl



crawl

fly



fly

swim



swim

owl



owl

Activities

On Lesson

3

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

1 wind _w

2 _sno _

3 o _l

4 thr _w

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The bear lives in a
 a) house b) cave c) hole
2. means to stay alive.
 a) Run b) Swim c) Survive
3. A is a safe place where animals stay.
 a) shelter b) pool c) nest
4. A bird fly in the sky.
 a) can b) can't c) be
5. Fish run in the sea.
 a) can b) can't c) will
6. A snake crawl.
 a) can b) can't c) is

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

crawl - survive - swim

A turtle can 1) in the water. A bird can fly in the air. A snake can 2) on the ground. These abilities help animals survive in their habitats.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

A little owl was worried. The storm was coming, and its nest was in a shaky tree. An old owl told him, "You can fly, little one. You can find a better shelter." The little owl flew away. He found a big cave and stayed safe inside. His ability to fly saved him.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- The little owl was
a) worried b) happy c) big
- The little owl can find a better
a) home b) shelter c) beach

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where was the nest?
- What saved the little owl?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- food - to - survive - need - Animals - . 
- bird - fly - can - The - sky - in - the - . 
- ground - A snake - crawl - can - the - on - . 

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- the fish can swim
- can a turtle crawl

Lesson

4

Protecting Nature

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



nature

الطبيعة



protect

يحمي

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

kind	لطيف - عطوف	broken	مكسور
share	يتشارك	carefully	بحرص - بعناية
Earth	الأرض	little	صغير
trash	قمامة	again	مرة أخرى

Definitions تعريفات

protect to keep something safe

يحمي: يحافظ على سلامة شيء ما

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
clean up	ينظف	cleaned up	يَجْعَلُ
throw	يلقي - يرمي	threw	made
		put	يضع
		put	put

Lesson (4)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make sure	يتأكد	put ... back	يعيد
be kind to	يكون لطيفاً مع	protect nature	يحمي الطبيعة
on the ground	على الأرض	to live	للعيش

Listen and act.

استمع ومثل.

Noha : We should be kind to **nature**.

ينبغي أن نكون عطوفين مع الطبيعة.

Maya : Yes! And we should help animals **survive**.

نعم! ويجب أن نساعد الحيوانات أن تبقى على قيد الحياة.

Noha : Do you know what the word "**protecting**" means?

هل تعرفين ما معنى كلمة «الحماية»؟

Maya : Yes! It means to **keep something safe**.

نعم! معناها الحفاظ على سلامة الشيء.



Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

We all **share** the Earth with animals. It is our job to **respect** them and their homes. We must not throw trash in the forest or the ocean. We can help by cleaning up and making sure animals have a safe



place to live. When we protect nature, we help animals survive.

نتشارك جميعاً كوكب الأرض مع الحيوانات. ومن واجبنا أن نحترمهم ونحترم موطنهم. يجب ألا نلقي القمامة في الغابة أو في المحيط. ويمكننا أن نساعد عن طريق التنظيف والتأكد من أن لدى الحيوانات مكاناً آمناً لتعيش فيه. وعندما نحمي الطبيعة، فإننا نساعد الحيوانات على البقاء على قيد الحياة.

Read again, then choose the correct answer.

اقرأ مرة أخرى، واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Who do we share the Earth with?
 a) cars b) books c) animals
2. How can we help animals?
 a) by throwing trash b) by cleaning up
 c) by making noise
3. When we protect nature, we help animals
 a) shake b) survive c) respect

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.

The Helping Hands

Lily and Bahaa went to the forest. They saw an old bird's nest on the ground. A little bird was crying. "Oh no, its home is broken," said Lily. Bahaa carefully put the nest back in a tree. They cleaned up the trash they found and made the forest a cleaner place. The little bird was happy again.



ذهبت ليلي وبهاء إلى الغابة. ورأوا عُش طائر قديم على الأرض. وكان يوجد طائر صغير يبكي. قالت ليلي: «يا إلهي، لقد تحطم بيته!» قام بهاء بوضع العش برفق فوق شجرة. وقاما بتنظيف القمامة التي وجداها، وجعلا الغابة مكاناً أنظف. عاد الطائر الصغير سعيداً من جديد.

Moral

We can all help to protect nature and its animals.

يمكننا جميعاً أن نساعد في حماية الطبيعة وحيواناتها.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We the Earth with animals.
a) take b) share c) give
2. We should protect
a) nature b) cars c) books
3. A bird lives in a
a) house b) school c) nest
4. We should help animals
a) run b) survive c) fly
5. Don't trash in the forest.
a) eat b) cook c) throw
6. They the trash in the school.
a) cleaned up b) looked up c) helped
7. The word "....." means to keep something safe.
a) nature b) protect c) survive

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

safe - survive - nature

- Sara : We should be kind to nature.
Laila : Yes! And we should help animals 1).....
Sara : What does "protect" mean?
Laila : It means to keep something 2).....
Sara : So, we should protect nature .

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Lily and Bahaa went to the forest. They saw an old bird's nest on the ground. A little bird was crying. "Oh no, its home is broken," said Lily. Bahaa carefully put the nest back in a tree. They cleaned up the trash they found and made the forest a cleaner place. The little bird was happy again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Lily and Bahaa went to the
a) forest b) school c) zoo
- The little bird was
a) flying b) crying c) sleeping

B) Answer the following questions.

- What did they see?
- What did they do with the trash?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

- be - nature - We - to - should - kind - .
.....
- the Earth - We - with - share - animals - .
.....

5 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Protecting nature

share - respect - nature

Review On Unit

5

Vocabulary

Lesson (1)	habitat	موطن - بيئة
	ocean	محيط
	wild	بري
	desert	صحراء
	forest	غابة

Lesson (3)	shelter	مأوى
	survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة
	crawl	يزحف
	fly	يطير
	swim	يسبح

Lesson (2)	fur	فرو
	feathers	ريش
	hoof	حافر
	nest	عش
	claws	مخالب
	paw	كف
	tail	ذيل

Lesson (4)	nature	الطبيعة
	protect	يحمي

Phonics

Long "oo" /u:/

moon

zoo

Short "oo" /u/

foot

wood

Long "ow" /ou/

snow

window

Short "ow" /au/

cow

owl

Language

1) Adjectives

- a hot desert

- a wild lion

- a deep ocean

- tall trees

2) can / can't

- A bird can fly.

- A fish can't fly.

Writing Corner

- Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Animals' habitats

A habitat is a special home for an animal. The desert is a hot, sandy place. A forest is a cool, shady place with lots of trees.

Describing animals

A bird has feathers and lives in a nest. A bear is furry with big paws and sharp claws. It lives in the jungle.

What can animals do?

A bird can fly in the air. A turtle can swim in the sea. A snake can crawl on the ground.

Animals' shelter

A shelter is a safe place where animals stay. It keeps them warm and dry. Animals need shelter to survive.

Protecting nature

We all share the Earth with animals. We must respect their homes. We should be kind to nature.

Dictation On Unit

5

Lesson (1)	habitat	غابة
	desert	بري
	explore	قمر
	foot	حار
	deep	محيط
Lesson (2)	claws	كف الحيوان
	feathers	دب
	nest	فروع الشجر
	fur	حافر
	gather	ذيل
Lesson (3)	swim	ثلج / جليد
	shaky	نافذة
	crawl	مأوى
	survive	يطير
	owl	يرمي
Lesson (4)	kind	الطبيعة
	on the ground	يحترم
	clean up	قمامة
	Earth	يحمي

Test Based On Unit 5

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

1 co_

2 sn_w

3 p_ol

4 co_k

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The is a big area of salty water.

a) desert

b) ocean

c) forest

2. Birds live in a

a) nest

b) classroom

c) pool

3. We mustn't throw in the forest.

a) water

b) trash

c) air

4. This is a lion.

a) soft

b) deep

c) wild

5. A snake fly in the sky.

a) can

b) can't

c) must

6. A fish swim in the sea.

a) can

b) can't

c) will

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

jungle - soft - sharp

The tiger is a wild animal. It has 1) claws. It lives in the 2) It has strong legs.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 e o a c n 

2 w r c a l 

3 e e d t s r 

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

We all share the Earth with animals. It is our job to respect them and their homes. We must not throw trash in the forest or the ocean. We can help by cleaning up and making sure animals have a safe place to live. When we protect nature, we help animals survive.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- We share the Earth with
a) trees b) animals c) homes
- We can help animals by
a) cleaning up b) running c) washing up

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is our job?
- What happens when we protect nature?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- can - water - The fish - swim - in - .

- do - Where - live - lizards - ?

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. how do animals survive

2. a cow can't fly

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Describing animals

bird - fluffy - bear - sharp

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A bird has

a) fur

b) feathers

c) hoof

2. A bird lives in a

a) nest

b) tree

c) house

3. A bird can

a) swim

b) crawl

c) fly

2 Fill in the missing letter.

أكمل الحرف الناقص.

1 c_w

2 h_of

3 sw_m

4 sh_rp

3 Fill in the missing letter.

أكمل الحرف الناقص.

1 z_o

2 wind_w

3 f_r

4 n_st

Unit 6

The Honest Choice

الاختيار الصادق

GRADE 3
CLASSROOM



Learning Outcomes

Retell the sequence of events using target vocabulary.

يُعيد سرد أحداث القصة مستخدماً الكلمات المستهدفة.

Discuss key story elements (characters, setting and events) using simple language.

يتحدث عن عناصر القصة الأساسية (مثل الشخصيات والمكان والأحداث) بلغة سهلة.

Speaking

Ask and answer simple questions about characters and events.

يسأل ويجيب عن أسئلة بسيطة حول الشخصيات وأحداث في القصة.

Discuss the moral of the story.

يناقش الدرس المستفاد من القصة.

Understand and define new vocabulary words in context.

يفهم معاني الكلمات الجديدة واستعمالها في الجمل.

Reading

Identify the main characters, setting, and key events in a story.

يتعرف على الشخصيات الرئيسية، والمكان، والأحداث المهمة في القصة.

Answer comprehension questions about the story.

يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم الخاصة بالقصة.

Identify supporting details from a story read aloud.

يحدد التفاصيل الداعمة من قصة مقروءة بصوت عالٍ.

Listening

Recall story events in the correct order after listening.

يتذكر أحداث القصة بالترتيب الصحيح بعد الاستماع إليها.

Identify the character who speaks in a story dialog read aloud.

يحدد الشخصية التي تتحدث في الحوار في القصة المقروءة بصوت عالٍ.

Writing

Complete sentences using vocabulary from the story.

يكمل الجمل باستخدام مفردات من القصة.

Write a paragraph about the story using target vocabulary words.

يكتب فقرة عن القصة مستخدماً الكلمات المستهدفة.

Story Map

CHARACTERS



Lina

لينا

a student,
8 years old



Nour

نور

Lina's classmate,
8 years old



Miss Salma

أستاذة سلمى

The teacher

SETTING

The school المدرسة

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Picture
backpack	a bag for carrying books	حقيبة الظهر 
nervous	worried, not relaxed	قلق أو متوتر 
whisper	to speak very quietly	يهمس أو يتكلم بصوت منخفض 
copy	to write the same thing	ينسخ 
cheating	doing something dishonest	غش 
truth	saying what is real and true	الحقيقة 
break	a stop for a short rest	استراحة / فسحة 
choice	a decision you make	اختيار 

Parts of the story

1 The Beginning

Lina forgot to finish her math homework and felt very nervous when Miss Salma began collecting the students' notebooks.

نسيت لينا أن تكمل واجب الرياضيات، وشعرت بالتوتر الشديد عندما بدأت الأستاذة سلمى بجمع دفاتر التلاميذ.

2 The Middle

Lina refused to copy Nour's homework because she knew cheating was wrong. She honestly told Miss Salma the truth.

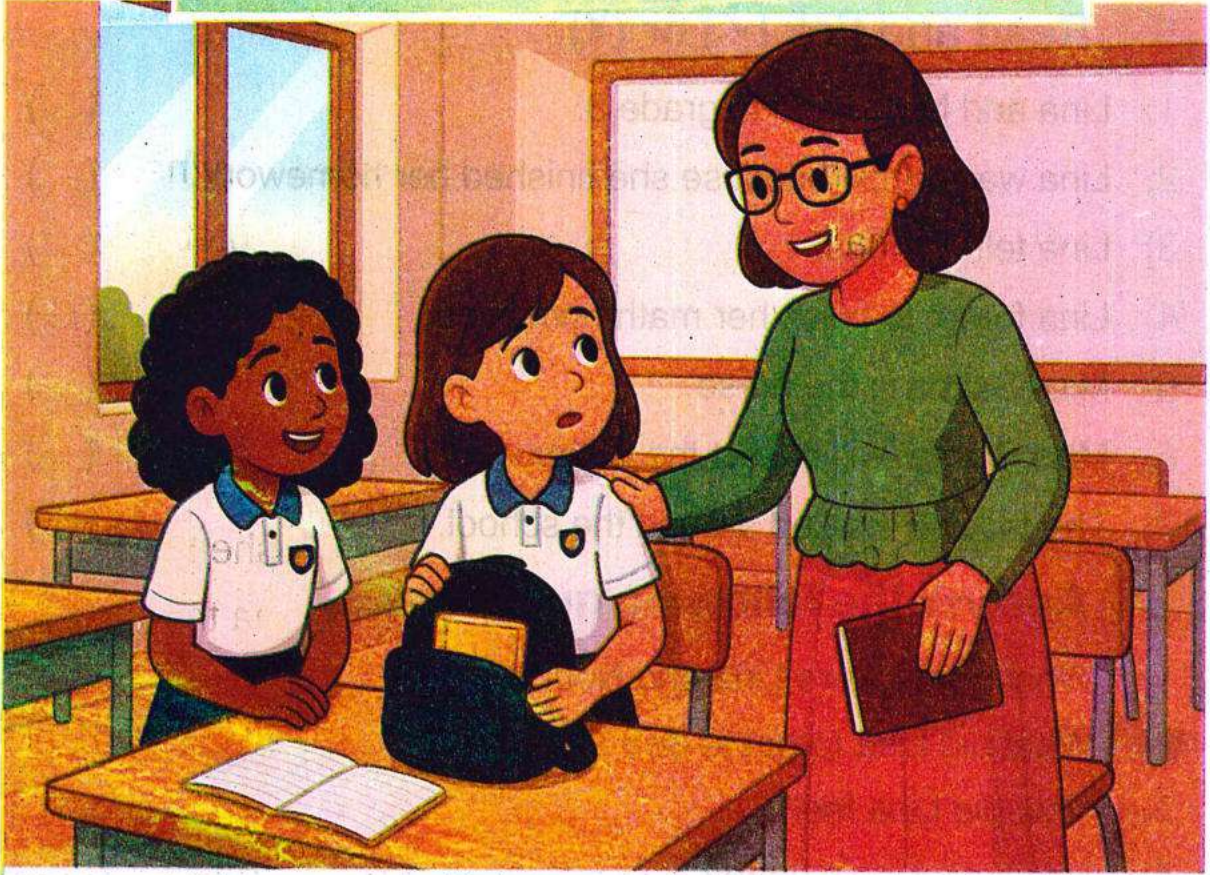
رفضت لينا أن تنسخ واجب نور لأنها كانت تعلم أن الغش خطأ. وقالت الحقيقة بصدق للأستاذة سلمى.

3 The End

Lina told Nour that being honest felt better than cheating, even though it was scary.

قالت لينا لـ نور إن الصدق أفضل من الغش، حتى لو كان الأمر مخيفًا.

The Beginning



Lina and Nour were both in grade 3. One sunny morning, Lina looked at her backpack and **gasped**.

"Oh no! I forgot to finish my math homework!" she thought. Her heart **beat** fast. She felt nervous.

كانت لينا ونور في الصف الثالث الابتدائي. في صباح مشمس، نظرت لينا إلى حقيبتها وشهقت: فكّرت في نفسها "يا إلهي! لقد نسيت أن أنهي واجب الرياضيات!" كان قلبها يخفق بسرعة، وشعرت بالتوتر.

Miss Salma, the teacher, **walked around** the classroom. "Good morning, children! Please **take out** your math **notebooks**. I will **collect** them now," she said.

تجولت المعلمة سلمى في أرجاء الفصل وقالت: "صباح الخير يا أطفال! من فضلكم أخرجوا دفاتر الرياضيات من حقائبكم، سأجمعها الآن."

Activities

1 Read and tick (✓) or (X).

- 1) Lina and Nour were in grade 3. (.....)
- 2) Lina was happy because she finished her homework. (.....)
- 3) Lina felt nervous. (.....)
- 4) Lina forgot to finish her math homework. (.....)
- 5) Miss Salma is the nurse. (.....)
- 6) Miss Salma will collect the notebooks. (.....)
- 7) The teacher walked around the school. (.....)

2 Answer the following questions.

- 1) What grade were Lina and Nour in?
- 2) What did Lina forget to do?
- 3) How did Lina feel?
- 4) How was Lina's heart?
- 5) Who is Miss Salma?
- 6) What did Miss Salma ask the children to do?
- 7) Where did the teacher walk around?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Lina forgot to do her homework.
a) math b) Arabic c) English
2. Miss Salma was the
a) doctor b) teacher c) nurse
3. The teacher walked around the
a) school b) bedroom c) classroom

The Middle



Lina tried to finish her homework quickly, but she could not do it. Nour **leaned** toward her and whispered, "Don't worry, Lina. You can copy my homework. It is easy." Lina **shook** her head. "No, Nour. That is not right. I should tell the truth. Cheating is wrong."

حاولت لينا أن تنهى واجبها بسرعة، لكنها لم تستطع. اقتربت منها نور وهمست قائلة: "لا تقلقي يا لينا، يمكنك نسخ واجبي.

إنه سهل." هزت لينا رأسها وقالت: "لا يا نور، هذا ليس صحيحًا. يجب أن أقول الحقيقة. الغش خطأ."

When Miss Salma came to Lina's desk, Lina took a deep **breath**.

"I'm sorry, Miss Salma. I **forgot** to do my homework." Miss Salma smiled **gently**. "Thank you for telling the truth, Lina. You can finish your homework today and **bring** it tomorrow."

عندما جاءت المعلمة سلمى إلى مقعد لينا، أخذت لينا نفسًا عميقًا وقالت: "أنا آسفة يا ميس سلمى، لقد نسيت أن أعمل واجبي."

ابتسمت الأستاذة سلمى بلطف وقالت: "شكرًا لأنك قلت الحقيقة يا لينا. يمكنك إنهاء واجبك اليوم وإحضاره غداً."

Activities

1 Read and tick (✓) or (X).

- 1) Lina finished her homework before the teacher came. (.....)
- 2) Nour told Lina she could copy her homework. (.....)
- 3) Lina copied the homework from Nour. (.....)
- 4) Lina said that cheating is wrong. (.....)
- 5) Miss Salma was angry with Lina. (.....)
- 6) Lina told the truth to Miss Salma. (.....)
- 7) Miss Salma let Lina finish her homework later. (.....)

2 Answer the following questions.

- 1) What did Nour tell Lina to do?
- 2) Did Lina copy Nour's homework?
- 3) What did Lina say about cheating?
- 4) Who came to Lina's desk?
- 5) What did Lina tell Miss Salma?
- 6) Why did Miss Salma thank Lina?
- 7) When could Lina bring her homework?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Lina said, "Cheating is".
a) right b) wrong c) true
2. Nour wanted Lina to her homework.
a) take b) learn c) copy
3. Miss Salma thanked Lina for telling the
a) truth b) joke c) bad

The End



At break, Nour asked, "Weren't you scared to tell the truth?"

Lina nodded. "Yes, I was a little scared. But it feels better than copying someone else's work."

في الفسحة، سألت نور: "ألم تكوني خائفة من قول الحقيقة؟" أومأت لينا برأسها وقالت: "بلى، كنت خائفة قليلاً، لكن قول الحقيقة أفضل من نسخ عمل شخص آخر."

Nour smiled. "I will try to be honest too, even when it is hard."

From that day, Lina always **tried to** finish her homework **on time**. She also **remembered** that being honest is very important, even if it is not easy.

ابتسمت نور وقالت: "سأحاول أن أكون صادقة أيضاً، حتى عندما يكون الأمر صعباً." ومنذ ذلك اليوم، كانت لينا تحاول دائماً إنهاء واجبها في الوقت المحدد. وتذكرت أن الصدق شيء مهم جداً، حتى لو لم يكن سهلاً.

Moral / العبرة / المغزى

Honesty is always the best choice, even when it is difficult.

الصدق هو الخيار الأفضل دائماً، حتى عندما يكون الأمر صعباً.

Activities

1 Read and tick (✓) or (X).

- 1) Lina was a little scared to tell the truth. (.....)
- 2) Lina said she was not scared at all. (.....)
- 3) Lina felt better after telling the truth. (.....)
- 4) Nour said she would try to be honest too. (.....)
- 5) Lina decided not to finish her homework on time. (.....)
- 6) Lina tried to finish her homework on time after that day. (.....)
- 7) The story teaches us that honesty is important. (.....)

2 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Who asked Lina about telling the truth?
- 2) Was Lina scared to tell the truth?
- 3) What made Lina feel better?
- 4) What did Nour want to try?
- 5) What did Lina do after that day?
- 6) What did Lina remember about being honest?
- 7) What lesson did Lina learn?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Lina was a little to tell the truth.
a) scared b) happy c) hungry
2. Nour will try to be too.
a) fast b) honest c) angry
3. Being is very important.
a) honest b) tired c) hard

General Activities

1 Answer these questions in short sentences.

1) Who are the main characters in the story?

.....

2) Where did the story take place?

.....

3) What did Nour want Lina to do?

.....

4) What lesson did Lina learn?

.....

2 Who said this?

1) "Don't worry, you can copy my homework."

.....

2) "I forgot to do my homework."

.....

3) "Thank you for telling the truth."

.....

3 Ask and answer.

Work with a partner to answer these questions.

1) Did Lina finish her homework?

.....

2) What did Nour offer Lina?

.....

3) Was Lina honest?

.....

4 Write (T) for True and (F) for False.

1) Lina copied Nour's homework

(.....)

2) Nour told the truth even it was difficult.

(.....)

3) Miss Salma was angry with Lina.

(.....)

4) Lina felt better after telling the truth.

(.....)

5 Read and complete the sentences with a word from the box.

copy – truth – homework – scared

1. Lina forgot to do her
2. Nour told Lina, "You can my work."
3. Lina said, "I should tell the"
4. Lina was a little to be honest.

6 Read and put the events in order.

Read the events and number them from 1 to 4 to show the correct order from the story.

- () Lina forgot her homework.
- () Miss Salma thanked Lina for her honesty.
- () Nour told Lina to copy.
- () Lina told the truth.

7 Write sentences using the given words.

- 1) break → (.....)
- 2) truth → (.....)
- 3) honest → (.....)
- 4) copy → (.....)

8 Write 3 - 4 sentences.

Think about honesty. Write three sentences about what it means to you.

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review On Units (4, 5 & 6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------|--------|--------|
| 1 c_rn | 2 guit_r | 3 f_od | 4 c_ok |
| 5 compu_r | 6 h_rn | 7 sn_w | 8 _wl |

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 r e c s n e  	2 o d e r n  	3 o h o f 
4 e r s d t e  	5 e o n c a  	6 i t a l 

3 Read and match.

اقرأ و صل.

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| 1) Password | a) flying machine |
| 2) Drone | b) something secret to enter an account |
| 3) Fur | c) telling the truth |
| 4) Honest | d) soft hair covering animals |

4 Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary) اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. To protect your, don't share your password.
- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| a) account | b) shelter | c) feather |
|------------|------------|------------|

2. The desert is usually
 a) sandy b) furry c) shady
3. helps me do my homework.
 a) Screen b) Mouse c) Robot
4. At the break, the girl didn't the homework.
 a) copy b) whisper c) survive
5. I use the to take photos.
 a) camera b) computer c) pen
6. I usually take a when playing games.
 a) nap b) break c) lunch
7. A phone and a tablet are
 a) devices b) tools c) books
8. The bear is
 a) small b) furry c) fluffy
9. A is a safe place where animals stay.
 a) house b) hole c) shelter
10. means to stay alive.
 a) Survive b) Stay c) Fly
11. A is where animals live.
 a) desert b) habitat c) sea
12. I a room with my sister.
 a) share b) buy c) talk

Choose the correct answer. (Language)

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I will do my homework I'll play games.
 a) and b) but c) or
2. A kangaroo jump very high.
 a) can't b) can c) is

3. The boy was honest, he was nervous.
a) and b) but c) or
4. A camel live in the desert.
a) can't b) couldn't c) can
5. A fish live in the jungle.
a) can b) can't c) must
6. Squirrels fly.
a) can b) can't c) should
7. I have a phone a robot.
a) and b) but c) or
8. Do you want tea coffee?
a) and b) but c) or
9. I play football tomorrow.
a) will b) did c) was
10. I share my password.
a) will b) won't c) doesn't
11. The lion is
a) hot b) deep c) wild
12. It is a
a) hot desert b) desert hot c) desert tall

5 Circle the odd one.

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة.

- | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|----------|---|--------|---|--------|
| 1. computer | - | tablet | - | phone | - | paw |
| 2. camera | - | feathers | - | tail | - | claw |
| 3. lies | - | truth | - | soda | - | honest |
| 4. zoo | - | kangaroo | - | energy | - | moon |

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. food - need - Animals - to survive - .

.....

2. can - A turtle - in the - swim - water - .

.....

3. walks - a hoof - A horse - on - .

.....

4. is - The ocean - and - big - salty - .

.....

5. type - with - I - the keyboard - .

.....

6. on my - I - games - play - phone - .

.....

7. like - Do - robots - you - ?

.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. the phone is on the table

.....

2. don't share your password

.....

3. be careful

.....

4. karma is a smart girl

.....

Daily Assessments

Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Unit (1)

1. If I follow the, I will not get hurt.

- a) rules b) boys c) toys

2. leave the toys on the floor!

- a) Doesn't b) Don't c) Aren't

Lesson (1)

1. Always wear a to protect your head.

- a) glass b) helmet c) shirt

2. Wait for the light.

- a) blue b) stop c) green

Lesson (2)

1. The keeps us safe.

- a) policeman b) teacher c) nurse

2. You follow the rules.

- a) mustn't b) must c) can't

Lesson (3)

1. You mustn't talk to

- a) brothers b) sisters c) strangers

2. run near the street.

- a) Don't b) Didn't c) Doesn't

Lesson (4)

Unit (2)

1. gives us energy.

- a) Food b) Sleep c) Bike

2. You can help

- a) myself b) yourself c) herself

Lesson (1)

1. Cheese is rich in

- a) sugar b) calcium c) protein

2. Soda is

- a) healthy b) good c) unhealthy

Lesson (2)

1. I to keep my body healthy.

- a) exercise b) fight c) watch TV

2. The cat cleans every day.

- a) myself b) herself c) itself

Lesson (3)

1. I eat at 7 a.m.

- a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner

2. I have egg every day.

- a) a b) an c) some

Lesson (4)

Unit (3)

1. He was a He could save the girl.

- a) hero b) smart c) weak

2., he ate breakfast. Then, he went to school.

- a) Next b) First c) Finally

Lesson (1)

1. Dad math at school.

- a) plays b) runs c) teaches

2. A doctor's is to help sick people.

- a) job b) sport c) uniform

Lesson (2)

1. Ali is He never lies.

- a) honest b) leader c) weak

2. means to help someone.

- a) Courage b) Support c) Leader

Lesson (3)

Assessments

1. An runs fast in the race.
a) nurse b) athlete c) engineer
2. Omar won a
a) medal b) event c) sleep

Lesson (4)

Unit (4)

1. I use my to talk to friends.
a) phone b) computer c) TV
2. A robot a tablet are devices.
a) but b) or c) and

Lesson (1)

1. I use to learn English.
a) emails b) apps c) storm
2. We should use technology in a way.
a) balanced b) bad c) sad

Lesson (2)

1. A protects online accounts.
a) password b) virus c) screen
2. I play football tomorrow.
a) did b) will c) could

Lesson (3)

1. A can take photos from the sky.
a) drone b) phone c) tablet
2. A can help clean my room.
a) car b) robot c) screen

Lesson (4)

Unit (5)

1. A is where animals live.

- a) habitat b) house c) tree

2. The trees are

- a) hot b) deep c) tall

1. Birds have to help them fly.

- a) paws b) fur c) feathers

2. The bear is and has big paws.

- a) furry b) hot c) long

1. means to stay alive.

- a) Survive b) Swim c) Fly

2. A fish crawl on the ground.

- a) can b) can't c) is

1. We should protect

- a) nature b) pollution c) cars

2. We live on the

- a) sea b) Earth c) desert

Unit (6)

1. Lina forgot to do her

- a) homework b) breakfast c) bag

2. is wrong.

- a) Honesty b) Cheating c) Exercising

3. is a bag for carrying books.

- a) Whisper b) Backpack c) Copy

Lesson (1)

Lesson (2)

Lesson (3)

Lesson (4)



Weekly Assessments



Week (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. In an , you must call for help.
a) emergency b) house c) match
2. You must wear a when you ride your bike.
a) shirt b) coat c) helmet
3. touch hot things.
a) Don't b) Not c) Doesn't

2 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. be careful

.....

2. ali is reading a book

.....

Week (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The takes sick people to the hospital.
a) ambulance b) bus c) train
2. To stay safe, you must follow the
a) helmet b) rules c) rides
3. You run in the library.
a) must b) can c) mustn't

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. strangers - You - talk - mustn't - to - .

2. aid - helps - First - the injured - .

Week (3)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. is good for our bones.

a) Pizza

b) Milk

c) Sugar

2. Meat gives us

a) protein

b) vitamins

c) air

3. Mona looks at in the mirror.

a) myself

b) himself

c) herself

2 Circle the odd one out.

ضع دائرة حول المختلف.

1. milk - eggs - soda

2. himself - I - yourself

Week (4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I to keep my body healthy.

a) exercise

b) study

c) shout

2. I eat for a snack.

a) meat

b) eggs

c) yogurt

3. I have carrot.

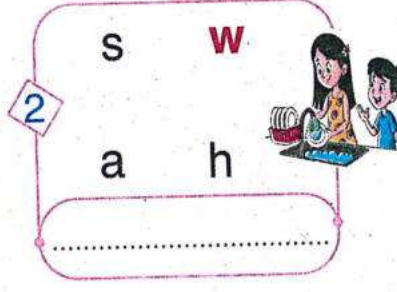
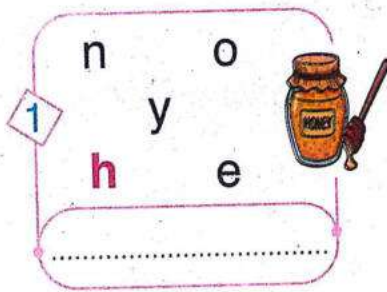
a) a

b) an

c) some

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.



Week (5)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- He is He solves problems well.
a) smart b) brave c) strong
- The police officer wears a
a) dress b) uniform c) shirt
- Firefighters people from the fire.
a) put b) give c) rescue

2 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- ali is a doctor
.....
- first, he climbed the ladder
.....

Week (6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My friends me when I am sad.
a) support b) show c) play

2. Ali won a gold in sports.

- a) cap b) medal c) book

3. Omar is and never lies.

- a) courage b) tall c) honest

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. Monday - is - The event - on - .

2. respect - teachers - We - our - .

Week (7)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I watch videos on my

- a) bag b) phone c) desk

2. I play on my tablet.

- a) games b) camera c) apps

3. Do you like English math?

- a) and b) but c) or

2 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

1 f_rmer

2 sh_rt

Week (8)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I use a for typing.

- a) screen b) keyboard c) virus

2. I learn new things from the

- a) robot b) drone c) internet

3. We share our password with anyone.

- a) will b) won't c) can

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. go - will - I - to - tomorrow - the park - .

.....

2. can - The - fly - drone - .

.....

Week (9)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A is a place with many trees.

- a) desert b) forest c) river

2. The bird has soft

- a) feathers b) fur c) paws

3. The ocean is big and

- a) tall b) deep c) strong

2 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 m__n

2 f__t

Week (10)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Animals need food, water and to survive.
a) shelter b) house c) books
2. means to keep something safe.
a) Kill b) Nature c) Protect
3. We all the Earth with animals.
a) share b) respect c) clean

2 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. a fish can swim

.....

2. can a snake fly

.....

Week (11)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Lina and Nour were in grade
a) one b) two c) three
2. Lina forgot to do her homework.
a) math b) English c) Arabic
3. Lina felt
a) happy b) nervous c) excited

2 Write (T) for true or (F) for false.

1. It was a sunny morning. ()
2. Miss Mona was the teacher. ()

Week (12)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Lina finish her homework.

- a) could b) couldn't c) can

2. Nour told Lina to her homework.

- a) copy b) play c) photo

3. Miss Salma thanked Lina for telling the

- a) lies b) truth c) joke

2 Write (T) for true or (F) for false.

1. Cheating is right. ()

2. Miss Salma smiled gently at Lina. ()

Week (13)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Lina was a little to tell the truth.

- a) happy b) scared c) amazing

2. Nour will try to be too.

- a) honest b) liar c) sad

3. is always the best choice.

- a) Courage b) Honesty c) Cheating

2 Write (T) for true or (F) for false.

1. Being honest is very important. ()

2. Lina wasn't honest. ()

March Test

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You must wear a in the car.
a) helmet b) seat belt c) cap
2. You must take when you are sick.
a) milk b) exercise c) medicine
3. Always be when you play.
a) careful b) angry c) sad
4. jump on the chair!
a) Not b) Don't c) Doesn't
5. Mazen ate chips and soda.
a) a b) an c) some

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

friends - safety - strangers

When you go out to play, you must follow 1)..... rules. You mustn't run in the street. You mustn't talk to 2).....

3 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- that's amazing

April Test

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A person who tells the truth is
a) honest b) small c) leader
2. My takes clear photos.
a) app b) camera c) TV
3. To protect your, use a strong password.
a) house b) book c) account
4. Do you want juice milk?
a) and b) but c) or
5. I share my password.
a) will b) won't c) must

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

drone - phone - apps

We use technology every day. I have a 1).....
I use it to talk to my friend. I use 2)..... to learn
English. I send emails every day.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- password - secret - My - is - .

Answers of paragraphs

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

"Stay at home"

We have rules at home. Always be careful when you play. Put your toys in the box.

Lesson (2)

"Safety in the street"

You must look both ways before you cross. Stop and wait for the green light. Don't run on the street.

Lesson (3)

"Safety rules"

In an emergency, you should call for help. You must wear a helmet when you ride a bike. Don't talk to strangers.

Lesson (4)

"How to stay safe"

You must wait for the green light before you cross. You must call for help in an emergency. You mustn't run near the street.

Test Based On Unit (1)

"Safety Rules"

You must call for help in an emergency. You must wait for the green light before crossing. You must wear a seat belt in a car.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

"Food for energy"

Food gives us energy. Meat gives us protein to be strong. Fruits and vegetables give us vitamins to keep us healthy.

Lesson (2)

"Healthy and unhealthy food"

Milk is good for our bones. Cheese is rich in calcium. Sweets are bad for our teeth.

Lesson (3)

"Taking care of yourself"

I exercise to keep my body healthy. I wash my hands before I eat. I take medicine when I am sick.

Lesson (4)

"Your healthy menu"

I eat yogurt with honey. I drink some soup when I'm hungry. I eat a lot of fruits and vegetables.

Test Based On Unit (2)

"Healthy food"

Fish helps our brain grow. Eggs are full of protein. Milk is good for bones.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

"Your hero"

My hero is the firefighter. He is brave and strong. He saves people from fires.

Lesson (2)

"A police officer"

A police officer helps keep us safe. He is brave. He helps people in need.

Lesson (3)

"A doctor's job"

A doctor works in hospitals. He checks his patients. He makes sure they get the best care.

Test Based On Unit (3)

"My hero"

My hero is the teacher. He helps students. He is very helpful and kind.

Paragraphs

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

"A computer"

I have a computer. It helps me do my schoolwork. I play games on it.

Lesson (1)

"How you use technology"

I use apps to learn English. I search for information on the internet. I send emails on my computer.

Lesson (3)

"Staying safe online"

To be safe online, you must have a strong password. Don't look at the screen for too long. Never share your password with anyone.

Lesson (4)

"Technology in the future"

In the future, my smart home will turn on the lights. A robot can help clean my room. A drone will deliver food to our homes.

Test Based On Unit (4)

"Using technology"

I press the power button to turn on a device. I type with a keyboard. I use the camera to take photos.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

"The camel"

The desert is hot and sandy. The camel can live in the desert. It is tall and strong.

Lesson (2)

"The bear"

The bear is furry. It has big paws. It has sharp claws. It lives in the forest.

Lesson (4)

"Protecting nature"

We all share the Earth with animals. We must respect their homes. We should be kind to nature.

Test Based On Unit (5)

"Describing animals"

A bird has fluffy feathers. It can fly in the sky. The bear has sharp claws. It lives in the forest.

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (2)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. tree 2. slow 3. grass 4. sleep

Test Based on Unit (1)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. slide 2. train 3. star 4. grow

Al-Azhar Corner

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

We have rules at home. They keep us safe. I put my toys in the box so no one falls.

Unit (2)

Lesson (2)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. green 2. beans 3. meat 4. sweet

Test Based on Unit (2)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. beans 2. green 3. sweets 4. meat

Al-Azhar Corner

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Food gives us energy. Fish helps our brains grow. Eggs are full of protein. Milk is good for our bones.

Unit (3)

Lesson (2)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. made 2. kite 3. hope 4. brave

Test Based on Unit (3)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. brave 2. kite 3. hope 4. name

Al-Azhar Corner

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ali is a doctor. He wears a special uniform. He helps sick people.

Review on Units (1, 2 & 3)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. slide 2. grass 3. meat 4. sweet
5. made 6. kite 7. truck 8. stop

Unit (4)

Practice on Phonics

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. teacher 2. farmer 3. storm
4. horn 5. star 6. player

Lesson (2)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. letter 2. guitar
3. fork 4. teacher

Test Based on Unit (4)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. storm 2. farmer
3. teacher 4. star

Al-Azhar Corner

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I have a phone and tablet. I use my phone to talk to friends. I play games on the tablet.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. moon 2. cook
3. pool 4. wood

Lesson (3)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. window 2. snow
3. owl 4. throw

Test Based on Unit (5)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. cow 2. snow
3. pool 4. cook

Al-Azhar Corner

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

A bird has feathers. It lives in a nest. It can fly in the sky.

Review on Units (4, 5 & 6)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. corn 2. guitar 3. food
4. cook 5. computer 6. horn
7. snow 8. owl

AL-BAHER

English

Final Revision

Primary 3

Term 2

Language in use

Imperatives

صيغة الأمر

Imperatives are short instructions used to tell someone **what to do or not to do**.

صيغة الأمر هي تعليمات قصيرة تُستخدم لإخبار شخص ما بما يجب فعله أو عدم فعله.

Usage

الاستخدام

We use **imperatives** to give safety rules or warnings.

نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء قواعد السلامة أو التحذيرات.

Form التكوين

Positive الإثبات

inf. (مصدر الفعل) + (باقي الجملة)

- Stop!



- Be careful!



Negative النفي

Don't + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + (باقي الجملة)

- Don't touch!



- Don't run!



NOTE

The **exclamation point (!)** at the end because they are strong instructions.

علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية الجملة لأن الأوامر قوية.

Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. careful!
a) Is b) Be c) Being
2. leave the book here.
a) Don't b) Not c) Didn't
3. quiet in the library.
a) Keeps b) Keeping c) Keep
4. Don't fast food every day!
a) eat b) eats c) eating
5. a helmet when riding a bike!
a) Wears b) Wear c) Wearing
6. run across the street!
a) Don't b) Do c) Doing
7. your homework regularly.
a) Did b) Do c) Doing
8. out! A car is coming.
a) Watched b) Watching c) Watch
9. shout in the classroom!
a) Not b) Don't c) Doesn't
10. Always the rules at home.
a) follow b) followed c) follows
11. ! Don't run on the street.
a) Stops b) Stop c) Stopped
12. jump on the chair!
a) Didn't b) Not c) Don't

13. Don't with your brother!
 a) fight b) fights c) fighting
14. touch hot things!
 a) No b) Don't c) Not
15. honest!
 a) Be b) Being c) Are
16. Don't here!
 a) smokes b) smoke c) smoking
17. down! You look tired.
 a) Sit b) Sat c) Sitting
18. to bed! It's late.
 a) Goes b) Go c) Going
19. Don't in the street!
 a) play b) plays c) playing
20. a seat belt in a car.
 a) Wears b) Wearing c) Wear

2 Correct the underlined words.

صحّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. Doesn't sleep in class! (.....)
2. Opened the window. (.....)
3. Stands up! (.....)
4. Not forget your book. (.....)
5. Being quiet! Your dad is sleeping. (.....)
6. Not shout in the library. (.....)
7. Brushing your teeth every day. (.....)
8. Being careful! (.....)
9. Didn't jump on the bed! (.....)

Language **in use****Modals for Rules**

الأفعال الناقصة للقواعد



We use “**must**” and “**mustn’t**” to talk about rules. They tell us what we must do and what we cannot do.

نستخدم (must) و (mustn't) للحديث عن القواعد فهي تخبرنا بما يجب علينا فعله وما لا يمكننا فعله.

must يجب

Subject الفاعل + must + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

We use “**must**” to say something is very important or necessary.

نستخدم (must) لنقول أن شيئًا ما مهم جدًا أو ضروري.

- You **must** call for help in an emergency.
- You **must** wear a helmet when riding a bike.
- You **must** follow the rules to stay safe.

mustn't يجب ألا

Subject الفاعل + mustn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

We use “**mustn't**” to say something is not allowed.

نستخدم (mustn't) لنقول أن شيئًا ما غير مسموح به.

- You **mustn't** talk to strangers.
- You **mustn't** run in the street.
- You **mustn't** leave anything on the floor.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You eat too much candy.
a) must b) mustn't c) should
2. You do your homework.
a) must b) mustn't c) can't
3. You leave your toys on the floor.
a) must b) mustn't c) can
4. You respect your parents.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't
5. You be kind to your mom.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't
6. You drive too fast.
a) must b) mustn't c) can
7. You study hard for the test.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't
8. You leave anything on the floor.
a) must b) mustn't c) can
9. You call for help in an emergency.
a) must b) mustn't c) can't
10. You talk to strangers.
a) must b) mustn't c) should
11. You forget your homework.
a) must b) mustn't c) can
12. You eat a lot of fruit.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't

Language

13. We follow the rules.
a) must b) mustn't c) can't
14. You be kind to animals.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't
15. You use your phone during the lesson.
a) must b) mustn't c) can
16. We respect animals and their homes.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't
17. You listen to your teacher.
a) must b) mustn't c) can't
18. You run in the classroom.
a) must b) mustn't c) should
19. You fight with your classmates.
a) must b) mustn't c) can
20. You stay in bed when you are sick.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't

2 Correct the underlined words.

مُحَدِّث الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. You mustn't be honest. (.....)
2. We mustn't respect our parents. (.....)
3. You must be late for school. (.....)
4. You mustn't wash your hands before eating. (.....)
5. You must talk to strangers. (.....)
6. You must run near the street. (.....)
7. You mustn't do your homework. (.....)
8. You must touch a hot cup. (.....)
9. You mustn't listen to your teacher. (.....)

Language in use

Reflexive Pronouns

الضمائر المنعكسة

- We use "**reflexive pronouns**" when the **subject** and the **object** are the same person.

نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون الفاعل والمفعول نفس الشخص.

Subject + v + object

He dresses **himself**.

- **Or** when you do something **yourself**.

أو عندما تقوم بعمل شيء ما **بنفسك** (أي بدون مساعدة).

e.g. I did the homework by **myself**.

For singular

للمفرد

Subject Pronouns	Reflexive Pronouns
I	myself بنفسي
You	yourself بنفسك
He - Ali	himself بنفسه
She - Sara	herself بنفسها
It - cat	itself بنفسه (الغير الهائل)

Examples:

I can make a sandwich by **myself**.

You can wash **yourself**.

He dresses **himself**.

She looks at **herself** in the mirror.

The cat / It cleans **itself**.

For plural للجمع

Subject Pronouns	Reflexive Pronouns	
You	yourselves	بأنفسكم
We	ourselves	بأنفسنا
They - Boys	themselves	بأنفسهم

Examples:

Take care of **yourselves**, girls. We built the tent **ourselves**.

The kids made a salad **themselves**.

لاحظ: إذا بدأت الجملة بفعل أمر، نستخدم الضمير **yourself** أو **yourselves**.

- Help **yourself**, Ali. (للمفرد)
- Behave **yourselves**, boys. (للجمع)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My sister can dress
a) himself b) herself c) myself
- I wash my clothes
a) myself b) yourself c) itself
- We repaired the computer
a) himself b) yourself c) ourselves
- My uncle lives by
a) herself b) himself c) themselves
- I taught how to swim.
a) myself b) yourself c) itself
- Take care of , girls!
a) yourself b) yourselves c) herself

7. The children made a cake
a) themselves b) himself c) ourselves
8. Help , boys!
a) yourselves b) yourself c) herself
9. I hurt
a) himself b) ourselves c) myself
10. My sister looks at in the mirror.
a) herself b) itself c) myself
11. Omar can go to school by
a) yourself b) himself c) herself
12. The dog cleans
a) himself b) itself c) myself
13. Dad does everything
a) himself b) itself c) yourself
14. Ali and I washed the car
a) himself b) myself c) ourselves

2 Correct the underlined words.

صَحِّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. I fell and hurt yourself. (.....)
2. The frog hops by myself. (.....)
3. She cleans the house by itself. (.....)
4. Dad baked this cake herself. (.....)
5. Omar washed the car themselves. (.....)
6. Ali can wash myself. (.....)
7. They do their homework by himself. (.....)
8. Mom can cook dinner itself. (.....)
9. I can dress herself. (.....)

Language in Use

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

They are nouns that have **singular** and **plural** form. We can count them (1, 2, 3, ...).

هي أسماء لها **مفرد** و **جمع** ويمكن عدّها (١، ٢، ٣، ...).

- We use (**a / an**) for singular nouns.

نستخدم **a / an** مع الاسم المفرد.

- We use **numbers** for more than one (plural).

نستخدم **الأعداد** لأكثر من واحد (الجمع).

Singular	Plural
a carrot	two carrots
an apple	three apples
an egg	four eggs

Remember

a + a consonant قبل الحرف الساكن

e.g. a bag, a cat, a dog, a fan, a hat

an + a vowel (a, e, i, o, u) قبل الحرف المتحرك

e.g. an ant, an umbrella, an elephant, an apple, an ice cream

Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

هي أسماء لا يمكننا عدّها، وليس لها صيغة جمع.

milk, rice, pasta, soup, honey, water

- We don't use (a / an) with them.

لا نستخدم a / an معهم.

- We use some for a part of it.

نستخدم (بعض some) للتعبير عن جزء منها.

some rice, some water

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I have juice.

a) a

b) an

c) some

2. Would you like chips?

a) a

b) an

c) some

3. I have apple a day.

a) a

b) an

c) some

4. Omar drinks milk.

a) a

b) an

c) some

5. There is carrot.

a) a

b) an

c) some

6. Give me banana, please.

a) a

b) an

c) some

7. There are eggs on the table.

a) a

b) an

c) some

8. I have sandwich.

a) a

b) an

c) some

9. I'm hungry. I'll eat salad.

a) a

b) an

c) some

Language

10. Let's have orange juice.
a) a b) an c) some
11. I want honey.
a) a b) an c) some
12. There is tomato on the plate.
a) a b) an c) some
13. There are water in the bottle.
a) a b) an c) some
14. I had sandwich.
a) a b) an c) some
15. There are tomatoes in the fridge.
a) a b) an c) some
16. I had pasta for lunch.
a) a b) an c) some
17. Can I have orange?
a) a b) an c) some

2 Correct the underlined words.

صَحِّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. Do you want a apple? (.....)
2. There is an cheese. (.....)
3. I had two egg for breakfast. (.....)
4. Mom bought a onions. (.....)
5. I put a honey in my yogurt. (.....)
6. I have an tomato. (.....)
7. Mom drank a milk. (.....)
8. Would you like a egg? (.....)
9. For an snack, I had yogurt. (.....)

Adverbs of Sequence ظروف التسلسل

Use "first" and "then" to show order

نستخدم «أولاً» و «ثم» لبيان الترتيب.

First: what happens at the beginning

أولاً: ماذا يحدث في البداية

Then: what happens next

ثم: ماذا يحدث بعد ذلك

Examples:

First, Omar trained hard.

Then, he climbed mountains.

First, he saw the fire.

Then, he called for help.

1 Complete with (First) or (Then).

أكمل بـ (أولاً) أو (ثم).

1., Omar trained hard.
....., he climbed the mountain.
2., I went to my friend's house.
....., we had lunch.
3., she cleaned the house.
....., she cooked lunch.
4., I put on my uniform.
....., I went to school.
5., Omar had lunch.
....., he watched TV.

2 Read and correct the underlined words.

1. One, I did my homework. (.....)
Than, I played games. (.....)
2. Next, I washed my hands. (.....)
This, I had lunch. (.....)
3. Then, the girl warned people. (.....)
First, she helped them move to a safe place. (.....)

Language in Use

Coordinating Conjunctions حروف العطف

and

و

It expresses addition.

تعبّر عن الإضافة.



e.g. I have one sister **and** one brother.

but

لكن

It shows contrast.

تبيّن التناقض.



e.g. I like tennis, **but** I don't like basketball.

or

أو

It gives a choice.

تعطي اختيارًا.



e.g. Do you want milk **or** juice?

Remember

Punctuation Rules

علامات الترقيم

1- We put a **comma** before (**and** / **or**) for listing.

نضع الفاصلة قبل (**and** و **or**) للقوائم.

e.g. I have a tablet, a robot, **and** a computer.

e.g. She can use the phone, the tablet, **or** the computer.

2- We use a **comma** before (**but**).

نستخدم الفاصلة قبل (**but**).

e.g. The TV was off, **but** now it works.

1 Fill in the blanks (and - but - or).

املأ الفراغ بـ (and - but - or).

1. Ali went to the zoo saw many animals.
2. Omar took an umbrella, it didn't rain.
3. I study English math.
4. Do you like phones tablets?
5. The desert is hot dry.
6. Can she use the phone the computer?
7. I can walk, I can't fly.
8. My mother likes swimming running.
9. Omar is tall, Sara is short.
10. A falcon can fly, it can't swim.
11. Father mother went to the market.
12. Is it a cat a tiger?
13. He can play tennis volleyball well.
14. She is good at math science.
15. Would you like tea coffee?

2 Correct the underlined words.

صحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. Will you watch TV but read a book? (.....)
2. I ate some rice but some salad for lunch. (.....)
3. I have a robot or a tablet. (.....)
4. I like reading, and I don't like watching TV. (.....)
5. Summer is hot, or winter is cold. (.....)
6. The tablet is good for games but reading. (.....)
7. Ali had an apple but an orange. (.....)
8. I like tennis, or I don't like football. (.....)

Language in use

Simple Future المستقبل البسيط

Usage

الاستخدام

We use **will / will not** to say something we **will do** or **will not do** in the future.

نستخدم **will / will not** لنقول أننا سنفعل أو لن نفعل شيئاً في المستقبل.

Form

التكوين

Subject + will + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

- I **will** play games after school.

Negative

النفي

Subject + will not + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

- I **will not** share my password.

Keywords

الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow

غداً

next (week)

(الأسبوع) القادم

Note

will not = won't

- I **won't** watch TV.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I use the keyboard to write an email.
a) will b) won't c) did
2. She share her password with anyone.
a) will b) won't c) should
3. Sara get up at 7 tomorrow.
a) will b) was c) have
4. My brother wash his car. It's clean.
a) will b) won't c) didn't
5. I help you with your homework.
a) will b) shouldn't c) doesn't
6. I go to school tomorrow because I'm sick.
a) will b) won't c) must
7. They come soon.
a) will b) were c) shouldn't
8. Mum cook dinner tomorrow.
a) will b) was c) have
9. I meet Ali tomorrow. He isn't in Egypt.
a) won't b) will c) should
10. They will home soon.
a) am b) is c) be
11. I'm thirsty! I get some water.
a) will b) won't c) mustn't
12. They go to the beach. It's sunny.
a) will b) won't c) shouldn't

13. She eat pizza. She isn't hungry.

- a) will b) won't c) mustn't

14. I watch TV. I have homework.

- a) will b) won't c) can

15. He go to the doctor. He is sick.

- a) will b) won't c) shouldn't

16. I will tennis after school.

- a) play b) playing c) played

17. They won't to school tomorrow.

- a) goes b) going c) go

18. We read a book tomorrow.

- a) will b) are c) did

2 Correct the underlined words.

مُحَدِّث الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. They will watch a movie. They are sleeping. (.....)
2. She will reading a book. (.....)
3. Ali play tennis tomorrow. (.....)
4. I will share my password with anyone. (.....)
5. We have a party tomorrow. (.....)
6. I will play in the street. (.....)
7. Dad go to Alexandria tomorrow. (.....)
8. Omar will play tennis. He is sick. (.....)
9. Ali won't help his mom at home. (.....)
10. I will doing my homework tonight. (.....)

Adjectives الصفات

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء (أشخاص، أماكن أو أشياء).

تأتي الصفة قبل الاسم الموصوف.



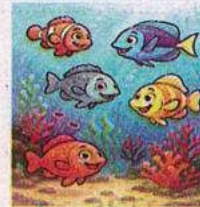
a **hot** desert



a **wild** kangaroo



The desert is **hot**.

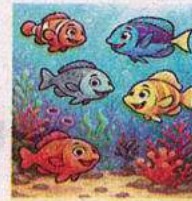


a **deep** ocean



a **tall** forest

يمكن أن تأتي في النهاية بعد (am - is - are)



The ocean is **deep**.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The lion is
a) strong b) deep c) tall
2. The desert is
a) tall b) hot c) wild
3. The bear is
a) sandy b) cool c) furry
4. The elephant is
a) small b) big c) short

Language

5. The crocodile is
a) scary b) nice c) deep
6. The ocean is and salty.
a) small b) big c) tall
7. The tiger has legs.
a) strong b) tall c) weak
8. The bear has claws.
a) furry b) sharp c) hot
9. The squirrel has a tail.
a) bushy b) slow c) deep
10. The turtle is
a) slow b) fast c) long
11. The bird has feathers.
a) sharp b) hot c) fluffy
12. The monkey has a tail.
a) long b) short c) hot

2 Correct the underlined words.

صَحِّح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. The elephant is small. (.....)
2. The tiger has a short tail. (.....)
3. The lion has tall teeth. (.....)
4. The bird has fur feathers. (.....)
5. The crocodile has a short tail. (.....)
6. The cat is fur. (.....)
7. The lion has claws sharp. (.....)
8. The desert is cold. (.....)
9. The ocean is small. (.....)

Language in Use

Can & Can't

can

يستطيع

We use **can** to talk about abilities.

نستخدم «can» للحديث عن القدرة.

Subject (مصدر الفعل) + **can** + **inf.** (الفاعل)



A bird **can** fly.



I **can** ride a bike.

can't

لا يستطيع

We use **cannot / can't** to talk about things you are not able to do.

نستخدم «cannot / can't» للحديث عن الأشياء التي لا نستطيع القيام بها.

Subject (مصدر الفعل) + **can't** + **inf.** (الفاعل)



A fish **can't** fly.



I **can't** ride a bike.

Note can't = cannot

1 Fill in the blanks (can - can't).

املأ الفراغ بـ (can - can't).

1. A fish live in the forest.
2. A camel walk in the desert.
3. A robot play football.
4. Squirrels fly.
5. Birds swim in the sea.
6. A turtle swim in the water.
7. A snake fly.
8. A camel survive in the desert.
9. A kangaroo jump.
10. An owl swim.
11. A giraffe crawl.
12. A monkey climb trees.
13. A shark walk or run.
14. A horse run very fast.
15. A dog fly.

2 Correct the underlined words.

صحح الكلمات التي تحتها خط.

1. A rabbit can swim. (.....)
2. A parrot can't fly in the sky. (.....)
3. A tiger can crawl. (.....)
4. A snake can't crawl on the ground. (.....)
5. A bird can swim. (.....)
6. Lions can't run. (.....)
7. A fish can't swim. (.....)
8. The bear can fly. (.....)

Review On Unit

7

Vocabulary

Lesson (1)

dangerous	خطير
emergency	حالة طوارئ
rules	قواعد
careful	حريص
hurt	يؤذي
safe	آمن

Lesson (2)

policeman	رجل شرطة
seat belt	حزام أمان
ambulance	سيارة إسعاف
first aid	إسعافات أولية
kitchen	مطبخ
smoke	دخان

Lesson (3)

street	شارع
cross	يعبر
stop	يقف
wait	ينتظر
walk	يمشي
helmet	خوذة
signs	لافتات

Lesson (4)

friends	أصدقاء
park	حديقة
nod	يومي برأسه
guide	مرشد - دليل
near	قريب
before	قبل
house	منزل

Phonics

/s/

slide

slow

/gr/

green

grow

/st/

star

step

/tr/

tree

truck

Language Imperatives

Positive: - Stop!

Negative: - Don't run!

Modals for rules

- You **must** call for help.

- You **mustn't** talk to strangers.

Activities

On Unit

1

نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

- 1 _leep 2 t_ain 3 s_ar 4 t_ap

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1

l a w k



2

g s i n



3

i c p n m a o e l



3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Vocabulary

- We follow the to keep us safe at home.
a) rules b) boxes c) signs
- Not following rules can be
a) safe b) good c) dangerous
- In an, you must stay calm and ask for help.
a) box b) emergency c) street
- If you aren't, you might get hurt.
a) careful b) happy c) fast
- You should look both ways before you the street.
a) run b) cross c) cut
- You must wear a when riding a bike.
a) helmet b) umbrella c) jacket

7. Don't talk to!
 - a) teachers
 - b) nurses
 - c) strangers
8. The keeps us safe.
 - a) policeman
 - b) driver
 - c) doctor
9. You must wear the in the car.
 - a) shoes
 - b) seat belt
 - c) first aid
10. Follow the rules to stay safe.
 - a) safety
 - b) food
 - c) math
11. Stop and wait for the light before crossing.
 - a) yellow
 - b) red
 - c) green
12. You must call a/an if something doesn't seem right.
 - a) adult
 - b) captain
 - c) car

Language

1. run inside the house!
 - a) Don't
 - b) Aren't
 - c) Won't
2. careful!
 - a) Is
 - b) Be
 - c) Are
3. Don't the toys on the floor.
 - a) leave
 - b) leaves
 - c) leaving
4. Always safety rules at home.
 - a) follows
 - b) following
 - c) follow
5. eat fast food every day!
 - a) Don't
 - b) Not
 - c) No
6. healthy food.
 - a) Eats
 - b) Eating
 - c) Eat

7. You talk to strangers.

- a) must b) mustn't c) can

8. You brush your teeth every day.

- a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't

9. You mustn't hot things.

- a) touches b) touch c) touching

10. You be kind to your friends.

- a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

careful - walk - follow

We have rules at home to keep us safe. If I 1) the rules, I will not get hurt. I am always 2) when I play.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

helmet - must - mustn't

Here are some safety rules on the road. You must wear a 1) when riding a bike. You 2) talk to strangers. Don't run near the street. Always stay safe.

Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

strangers - walk - talks

Mona : How do I know where to 1) safely?

Dad : Follow the signs.

Mona : What if someone I don't know 2) to me?

Dad : Don't talk to strangers.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ali was playing in his room. He saw a knife on the table. When he finished playing, he left his book on the floor. His mother said, "Don't leave the book here. Someone may fall." Ali listened to his mother. He put the book back on the shelf. Ali followed the rules.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Why did Ali's mother tell him not to leave the book on the floor?
a) It might get dirty. b) Someone may fall. c) It could get lost.
- What did Ali do with the book after his mother talked to him?
a) He threw it away. b) He left it on the floor.
c) He put it back on the shelf.

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where was Ali playing
- What did Ali see on the table?

- Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Tia and Sally are friends. One day, they went outside to play. Tia said, "Wear your helmet when you ride your bike." Sally said, "Don't talk to strangers. Call for help in an emergency." At the park, Sally saw a stop sign. She said, "Stop! Wait for the green light before crossing." Tia looked both ways and said, "Be careful! Don't run near the street."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- What did Sally say about strangers?
a) Say hello to them. b) Don't talk to them. c) Ask them for help.
- What should you do before crossing the street?
a) Run quickly. b) Wait for the green light.
c) Close your eyes.

B) Answer the following questions.

- What must you wear when riding a bike?
- What did Tia and Sally talk about?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. must - calm - You - stay - .

2. careful - Always - at home - be - .

3. run - on - Don't - the street - .

4. did - Sara - What - see - ?

5. policeman - us - The - safe - keeps - .

6. crossed - safely - She - the street - .

7. asked - Lina - help - for - .

8. helps - aid - First - people - injured - .

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. don't run near the street

2. watch out

3. where do you live

4. sara crossed the street

5. be careful

6. what did you do

7. omar is careful at home

8. mona follows the rules

9. do you ride a bike

8 اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن: Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about:

How to stay safe in the street

bike - helmet - strangers - run

- اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن: Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about:

Safety at home

rules - careful - toys

Review On Unit

2

Vocabulary

Lesson (1)	food	طعام
	meat	لحمة
	sugar	سكر
	fruits	فواكه
	water	مياه
	vegetables	خضراوات

Lesson (2)	milk	حليب - لبن
	cheese	جبين
	nuts	مكسرات
	chips	شيبسي
	fries	بطاطس محمرة
	sweets	حلويات

Lesson (3)	exercise	يتمرن
	clean	ينظف
	rest	راحة
	medicine	أدوية
	stay in bed	يبقى في السرير
	sick	مريض
	wash	يغسل

Lesson (4)	yogurt	زبادي
	soup	حساء / شوربة
	honey	عسل
	breakfast	إفطار
	lunch	غداء
	dinner	عشاء
	snack	وجبة خفيفة

Phonics

ea: eat	-	meat	-	beans
ee: cheese	-	sweet	-	tree

Language

1- Reflexive pronouns:

- I can wash **myself**.
- We made a cake **ourselves**.

2- Countable & Uncountable

- a carrot (two carrots) an apple
- some milk / rice

Activities

On Unit 2

نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

1 m_at

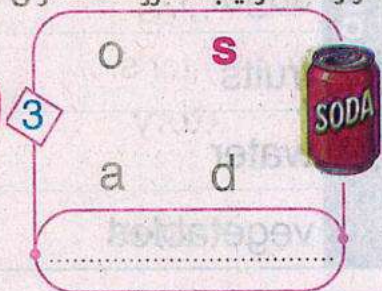
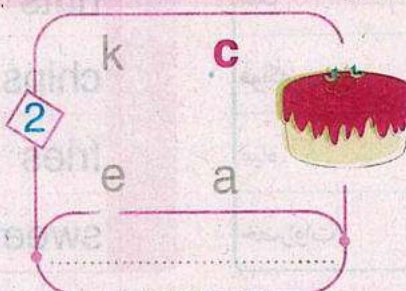
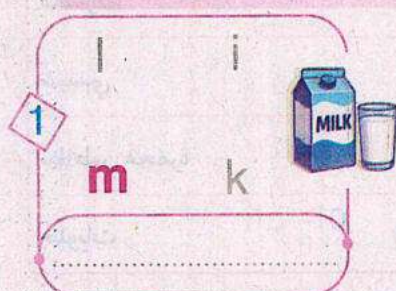
2 ch_ese

3 b_ans

4 _at

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.



3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Vocabulary

- Food gives us
a) energy b) money c) sugar
- gives our body protein.
a) Fruit b) Water c) Meat
- helps our body work well.
a) Water b) Soda c) Cake
- is good for our bones.
a) Chicken b) Milk c) Pizza
- Lollipops are
a) healthy b) good c) unhealthy
- Bread is rich in
a) carbohydrates b) fats c) calcium

Units

7. I to keep my body healthy.
a) wash b) exercise c) climb
8. I take when I am sick.
a) juice b) milk c) medicine
9. I my room every day.
a) clean b) cook c) eat
10. I eat with honey.
a) eggs b) soda c) yogurt
11. I eat in the morning.
a) breakfast b) lunch c) snack
12. Nuts are healthy
a) sports b) snacks c) lunch

Language

1. I made this pizza all by
a) myself b) himself c) herself
2. We enjoyed at the party.
a) yourself b) ourselves c) themselves
3. Take care of, girls.
a) yourselves b) yourself c) themselves
4. The children can dress
a) himself b) yourself c) themselves
5. She can wash
a) herself b) itself c) myself
6. I have egg for breakfast.
a) a b) an c) some

7. Would you like honey?
a) a b) an c) some
8. I had sandwich.
a) a b) an c) some
9. Ali ate apple.
a) a b) an c) some
10. Omar drank water.
a) a b) an c) some

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

sweets - fruits - protein

Food gives us energy to play, learn, and grow. Meat gives us 1)..... Too much sugar is bad for our body. We must have 2)..... and vegetables every day.

Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

eggs - unhealthy - breakfast

Sara : What do you eat for breakfast?

Huda : I eat 1)..... and drink milk.

Sara : Do you eat cake and soda?

Huda : Yes, but I know they are very 2).....

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

himself - hungry - vegetables and fruits

Youssef wakes up early. He washes himself and smiles. "I am 1)....." He helps his mom in the kitchen. They do the breakfast. Youssef eats 2)..... He thanks his mom.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Nour liked eating snacks like chips, cake, and soda. He did not eat many fruits or vegetables. One day, he felt tired and had a stomachache. His teacher told him, "Nour, you need to eat healthy foods like fruits, vegetables and meat. Nour followed the advice. For breakfast, he ate an apple and drank some milk. For lunch, he had some rice and some salad. For a snack, he had yogurt. He felt strong and happy again.,

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Nour felt again.
a) weak b) strong c) sad
- For breakfast, Nour drank
a) juice b) water c) milk

B) Answer the following questions.

- What snacks did Nour like to eat?
- What should Nour eat for breakfast?

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Mazen likes to play every day, but he often forgets to wash his hands and eat healthy food. One day, he felt sick. His friend Nour said, "You should wash your hands, eat healthy food, rest, and exercise." Mazen listened to Nour. He washed himself carefully, ate eggs and fruit, drank water, and rested when he felt tired. He also exercised a little every day. After a few days, Mazen felt much better

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Mazen ate
a) cheese b) eggs c) fruit
- Mazen likes to every day.
a) cook b) play c) watch TV

B) Answer the following questions.

- What should Mazen do?
- What is the moral of the text?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. my - day - I - every - clean - room - .

2. does - food - What - us - give - ?

3. protein - Eggs - full of - are - .

4. cooked - Fries - oil - are - in - .

5. are - Cake - not - you - soda - and - good - for - .

6. do - lunch - What - you - for - eat - ?

7. by - She - herself - exercises - .

8. some - Omar - drank - milk - .

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. laila loves eating snacks

2. are you healthy

3. i eat breakfast at home

Units

4. ahmed can wash himself

5. rice gives us energy

6. do you like pizza

7. water is healthy

8. what do you eat for lunch

9. don't eat too much sugar

8. Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Healthy food

energy - milk - calcium - eggs

Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Staying healthy

exercise - wash - eat

Review On Unit

3

Vocabulary

Lesson (1)	hero	بطل
	brave	شجاع
	strong	قوي
	kind	لطيف - عطوف
	smart	ذكي

Lesson (2)	helpful	متعاون
	rescue	ينقذ
	uniform	زِيّ موحد
	teach	يلدرس - يعلم
	jobs	وظائف

Lesson (3)	support	يسانّد - يدعم
	inspire	يلهم
	leader	قائد
	courage	شجاعة
	honest	صادق - أمين

Lesson (4)	athlete	لاعب رياضي
	respect	يحترم
	event	حدث - فعالية
	medal	ميدالية
	famous	مشهور

Phonics: Magic "e"

mad	مجنون	made	صنع
hat	قبعة	hate	يكره
kit	عدة	kite	طائرة ورقية
pin	دبوس	pine	صنوبر
not	لا	note	ملاحظة
rob	يسرق	robe	ثوب

Language

Adverbs of Sequence

- First, Omar trained hard.
- Then, he climbed the mountain.

Activities

On Unit 3

نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

1 k_te

2 s_ve

3 br_ve

4 r_be

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 d i k n



.....

2 e c r s e u



.....

3 l a e t e t h



.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Vocabulary

- A ... is someone who does something special, good, or brave.
 - hero
 - strong
 - smart
- Being means to do difficult things easily.
 - brave
 - strong
 - kind
- Being means showing courage in hard times.
 - beautiful
 - hero
 - brave
- Khaled is a brave He puts out the fire.
 - firefighter
 - doctor
 - teacher
- My dad math at school.
 - learns
 - makes
 - teaches
- My sister is She helps her friends.
 - helpful
 - bad
 - careless

7. The captain is the of the team.
a) **player** b) **leader** c) **driver**
8. Omar is and never lies.
a) **honest** b) **kind** c) **angry**
9. Heba helped build hospitals to sick people.
a) **support** b) **make** c) **do**
10. We have a school every month.
a) **medal** b) **event** c) **uniform**
11. We our teachers and parents.
a) **respect** b) **fight** c) **give**
12. Omar won a in the race.
a) **homework** b) **medicine** c) **medal**

Language

1., he saw the fire.
a) **First** b) **Second** c) **One**
2. She helped the old man., she gave him water.
a) **First** b) **Then** c) **That**
3., I put on my uniform. Then, I went to school.
a) **First** b) **Next** c) **Finally**
4. Ali did his homework., he watched TV.
a) **Finally** b) **Than** c) **Then**
5., my dad had breakfast. Then, he went to work.
a) **First** b) **Then** c) **Next**
6., I did my homework. Then, I played games.
a) **First** b) **Then** c) **Next**

7. First, I washed my hands. , I had lunch.

- a) First b) Then c) After

8. First, the girl warned people. , she helped them move to a safe place.

- a) First b) Then c) Before

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

helmet - cap - alarm

Every day, the firefighter puts on his 1) and uniform. When the fire 2) rings, he jumps into the fire truck and drives quickly through the streets. He likes helping others.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

searched - policewoman - First

Officer Asmaa is a 1) in Cairo. One day, she saw a boy crying in the street. 2) , she stopped and spoke to him kindly. He was lost and couldn't find his parents. Then she carefully searched the streets and found his parents.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

poor - cared - helped

Heba helped many people during hard times in Egypt. She always 1) about others and wanted to make their lives better. First, she gave food and clothes to 2) families.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Officer Asmaa is a policewoman in Cairo. One sunny morning, she was walking on her way to work when she saw a little child crying in the street. First, she stopped right away and spoke to him kindly, asking what was wrong. The child was lost and could not find his parents. Officer Asmaa held his hand, and told him not to be afraid. Then, she carefully searched the street until she found his parents.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Officer Asmaa held his hand, and told him not to be.....
a) afraid b) happy c) careful
- One sunny, she was walking on her way to work.
a) afternoon b) morning c) evening

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where does Asmaa work?
- What was she doing when she saw a little child crying?

6 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Feryal Ashraf is a famous Egyptian athlete. She worked hard every day to get ready for a big event. She trained, practiced, and never gave up. At last, she won a gold medal for Egypt. Her school made a party to celebrate her. Everyone clapped and smiled for her. Feryal said, "This medal is for everyone who helped me."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Feryal Ashraf never
a) gave up b) trained c) worked
- Everyone and smiled for her.
a) cried b) made c) clapped

B) Answer the following questions.

- Who is Feryal Ashraf?
- What did she win?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. a strong - Ahmed - swimmer - is - .

2. saved - from - He - the boy - smoke - .

3. mom - science - My - teaches - .

4. is - The nurse - helpful - very - .

5. officers - a uniform - The police - wear - .

6. is - your - What - job - dad's - ?

7. leader - helps - A good - team - his - .

8. respect - We - parents - should - our - .

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. we respect our teacher

2. when is the school event

3. they lived in Aswan

4. feryal Ashraf is a famous athlete

5. omar is honest

6. what's your job

7. asmaa is a policewoman

8. i am from Cairo

9. do you like math

8 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

People who help us

doctors - police officers - nurses - firefighters

- Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

A famous athlete

Feryal - medal - trained - gave up

Review On Unit

4

Vocabulary

Lesson (1)	computer	كمبيوتر
	tablet	تابلت
	phone	تليفون
	robot	إنسان آلي
	TV	تلفاز

Lesson (2)	search	يبحث
	camera	كاميرا
	apps	تطبيقات
	games	ألعاب
	email	بريد إلكتروني

Lesson (3)	screen	شاشة
	button	زر
	keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح
	password	كلمة مرور
	virus	فيروس

Lesson (4)	drone	طائرة بدون طيار
	smart home	بيت ذكي
	internet	الإنترنت
	smartphone	هاتف ذكي
	technology	تكنولوجيا

Phonics

er /ər/	computer	-	teacher	-	player
ar /ɑːr/	car	-	star	-	guitar
or /ɔːr/	corn	-	horn	-	storm

Language

and

e.g. I have a phone **and** a tablet.

but

e.g. I like tennis, **but** I don't like football.

or

e.g. Do you want milk **or** juice?

Activities

On Unit 4

نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

1 teach_r

2 c_rn

3 st_r

4 play_r

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 a t l
t e b



2 s a
p p



3 s v
u r



3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Vocabulary

- I use my to talk to my friends.
a) phone b) car c) TV
- The can clean the floor by itself.
a) tablet b) robot c) screen
- Phones and computers are
a) foods b) machines c) devices
- My takes clear photos.
a) camera b) games c) TV
- I download new on my tablet.
a) buses b) apps c) emails
- We play after school.
a) games b) snacks c) apps

Units

7. A/An is a way to send messages online.
a) TV b) app c) email
8. I for information on the internet.
a) search b) send c) use
9. I use the for typing.
a) button b) keyboard c) virus
10. A can harm your computer.
a) virus b) game c) screen
11. I flew my toy in the park.
a) car b) drone c) bus
12. Press the power to turn on a device.
a) button b) screen c) app

Language

1. I have a phone a robot.
a) and b) but c) or
2. The TV was off, now it works.
a) and b) but c) or
3. Do you like computers tablets?
a) and b) but c) or
4. Ali likes apples, he doesn't like juice.
a) and b) but c) or
5. Omar is brave honest.
a) and b) but c) or
6. I have one sister one brother.
a) and b) but c) or

7. The tablet is good for games reading.
a) and b) but c) or
8. Dad travel to Cairo tomorrow.
a) did b) have c) will
9. He do his homework today.
a) will b) was c) would
10. Ali play football because he is sick.
a) did b) won't c) will

4

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

account - screen - password

My new computer looks great. The 1)..... is big. I use the keyboard for typing. I need to make a strong 2)..... so no one can get into my account. I will play games on my computer.

-

Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

cool - photos - drones

Hassan : Hi, Ahmed! What are you doing?

Ahmed : I'm watching a video about 1).....

Hassan : Amazing! What does it do?

Ahmed : It flies and takes 2)..... from the sky.

-

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

games - search - apps

We use technology every day. I 1)..... for information on the internet. I use apps to learn English. I play 2)..... on my tablet. I send a message by email.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Adam takes a funny photo of his friend. He wants to share it online. His friend says, "Please, don't share it." Adam says, "Okay, I understand." The next day, another boy shares a photo without asking. His friend feels sad. Adam tells him, "You should always ask first." The boy says, "You are right. I won't do that again."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Who takes the photo?
 a) Adam b) His friend c) A teacher
2. What does Adam's friend say?
 a) "Share it!" b) "Please don't share it," c) "Take another one."

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Adam do with the photo?
4. How does his friend feel about the photo?

6 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Lina loves to read books. She reads in the morning and at night. One day, she forgets to clean her room. Her brother says, "You should do something else too." The next day, Lina reads a little and then helps her mom cook. Her mother is happy. Lina feels proud and excited.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. How does Lina's mother feel?
 a) Sad b) Happy c) Proud
2. What does Lina forget to do one day?
 a) Eats lunch b) Does her homework c) Cleans her room

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Lina do every day?
4. How does Lina feel at the end of the story?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. a famous - Feryal Ashraf - Egyptian - is - athlete - .
.....
2. gold - medal - She - won - a - .
.....
3. Saturday - The - is - event - on - .
.....
4. captain - We - respect - our - .
.....
5. at - long - Don't - screen - the - look - too - for - .
.....
6. video - watching - drones - I'm - about - a - .
.....
7. click - Omnya - the - won't - button - .
.....
8. letters - password - has - A - numbers - good - and - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. i have a computer
.....
2. He has a phone a tablet, and a robot
.....
3. do you like football
.....

Units

4. i learn english.

5. what will you do

6. I won't share my password

7. laila has a strong password

8. what are you doing

9. you must take a break

8 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Staying safe online

password - numbers - share - private

Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Technology in daily life

apps - search - play games

Review On Unit 5

Vocabulary

Lesson (1)	habitat	موطن - بيئة
	ocean	محيط
	wild	بري
	desert	صحراء
	forest	غابة

Lesson (3)	shelter	مأوى
	survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة
	crawl	يزحف
	fly	يطير
	swim	يسبح

Lesson (2)	fur	فرو
	feathers	ريش
	hoof	حافر
	nest	عش
	claws	مخالب
	paw	كف
	tail	ذيل

Lesson (4)	nature	الطبيعة
	protect	يحمي

Phonics

Long "oo" /u:/

moon

-

zoo

Short "oo" /ʊ/

foot

-

wood

Long "ow" /oʊ/

snow

-

window

Short "ow" /aʊ/

cow

-

owl

Language

1) Adjectives

- a hot desert

- a deep ocean

- a wild lion

- tall trees

2) can / can't

- A bird can fly.

- A fish can't fly.

Activities

On Unit 5

نص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

1 Listen and write the missing letter.

استمع واكتب الحرف الناقص.

- 1 m_on 2 f_ot 3 c_w 4 sno_

2 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1

l a s c w



.....

2

f l y



.....

3

s d t r e e



.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Vocabulary

1. means animals that live in nature and not owned by people.
a) Habitat b) Ocean c) Wild
2. live in the desert.
a) Lizards b) Whales c) Dolphins
3. I want to more about animals and their homes.
a) live b) survive c) discover
4. Each animal has a special home that helps it
a) discover b) survive c) give
5. The ocean is big and
a) salty b) fresh c) wild
6. Birds have to help them fly.
a) feathers b) legs c) feet

7. A horse walks on
 a) **paws** b) **hooves** c) **hands**
8. The bear is
 a) **tall** b) **soft** c) **furry**
9. The squirrel has a long, tail.
 a) **bushy** b) **small** c) **sharp**
10. A is a safe place where animals stay.
 a) **house** b) **school** c) **shelter**
11. A snake can on the ground.
 a) **crawl** b) **swim** c) **fly**
12. Animals need shelter to
 a) **play** b) **survive** c) **fight**

Language

1. The desert is
 a) **hot** b) **tall** c) **small**
2. It's a bear.
 a) **cold** b) **wild** c) **tall**
3. The trees in the forest are
 a) **tall** b) **deep** c) **long**
4. The bear has claws.
 a) **small** b) **soft** c) **sharp**
5. Birds have feathers.
 a) **fluffy** b) **hard** c) **hot**
6. A fish swim in the water.
 a) **can't** b) **can** c) **is**

Units

7. A kangaroo jump very high.
a) can b) can't c) mustn't
8. A panda fly.
a) can b) can't c) should
9. A bird crawl on the ground.
a) can b) may c) can't
10. A tiger run very fast.
a) can b) can't c) are

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

forest - habitat - ocean

Let's discover about animals and their homes. A 1) is where animals live. Many animals live in the 2) It has tall trees. Lizards live in the desert. It's hot and sandy.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

tree - cozy - tail

Squeaky the squirrel was very busy. He had a soft coat and a long, bushy 1) He used his sharp claws to climb up a tall tree. In the high branches, he made a 2) nest.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

trash - ocean - respect

We all share the Earth with animals. It is our job to 1) them and their homes. We must not throw trash in the forest or the 2)

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Animals have body parts that help them live. Horses have hooves on their feet and a tail to push away flies. A bear has big paws and sharp claws. A giraffe has a long neck to eat leaves from tall trees. A lion has strong legs to run fast. These body parts help animals live and stay safe in their homes.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Horses use their..... to push away flies.
a) tail b) ears c) neck
- A lion has strong..... to run fast.
a) wings b) legs c) hooves

B) Answer the following questions.

- How does a giraffe's long neck help it?
- What animals have hooves on their feet?

6 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Animals live in different homes. Each home is called a habitat. A hot place with sand is a desert. Camels live there. They can stay without water for a long time. A cool place with many trees is a forest. Many animals and birds live in the forest. A big place with water is the ocean. Fish and dolphins live in the ocean. Every animal has a home that helps it live?

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- A desert is a place.
a) hot b) cold c) wet
- Fish live in the
a) forest b) ocean c) desert

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where do dolphins live?
- Why do camels live in the desert?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. share - the - animals - all - Earth - We - with - .
.....
2. happy - bird - little - The - was - .
.....
3. trash - We - mustn't - throw - forest - the - in - .
.....
4. be - nature - We - to - should - kind - .
.....
5. survive - We - help - animals - should - .
.....
6. bear - big - A furry - has - paws - .
.....
7. can - A - fly - bird - sky - in - the - .
.....
8. food - to - Animals - survive - need - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. the fish can swim
.....
2. can a turtle crawl
.....
3. a bear lives in a cave
.....

4. the squirrel has a furry coat

5. a horse has hooves

6. birds have feathers

7. where does the fox live

8. the ocean is big and salty

9. be kind to nature

8 اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن: Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about:

Your favorite animal

camel - tall - desert - strong

- اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن: Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about:

Describing animals

bird - bear - jungle

Activities

On Unit 6

1 Read and tick (✓) or (X).

1. Lina and Nour were in grade 2. ()
2. Lina forgot to finish her homework. ()
3. Lina forgot her backpack at home. ()
4. Lina copied her homework from Nour. ()
5. Lina said, "Cheating is wrong." ()
6. Miss Salma was angry with Lina. ()
7. Miss Salma is Lina's teacher. ()
8. Lina always tried to finish her homework on time. ()
9. Nour is Lina's classmate. ()
10. Lina told the truth. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Lina forgot to do her homework.
a) math b) Arabic c) English
2. Lina said, "Cheating is"
a) right b) wrong c) true
3. Nour wanted Lina to her homework.
a) take b) learn c) copy
4. Lina and Nour were in grade
a) 2 b) 3 c) 5
5. Nour wanted Lina to copy her
a) email b) letter c) homework
6. Lina felt
a) happy b) nervous c) proud

7. Lina forgot to do her
 a) homework b) movie c) cartoon
8. is a bag for carrying books.
 a) Whisper b) Backpack c) Copy
9. means to write the same thing.
 a) Whisper b) Break c) Copy
10. is doing something dishonest.
 a) Cheating b) Copying c) Whispering
11. Children took out their notebooks.
 a) Arabic b) English c) math
12. is a stop for a short rest.
 a) Choice b) Break c) Truth

3 Who said this?

1. "I should tell the truth."
2. "Don't" worry. You can copy my homework."
3. "You can finish your homework today and bring it tomorrow."
4. "Weren't you scared to tell the truth?"
5. "I will try to be honest too, even when it is hard."
6. "Yes, I was a little scared."

4 Answer the following questions.

1. What did Lina forget to do?
2. Which grade were Lina and Nour in?
3. Was Lina nervous when she forgot her homework?
4. Was Lina scared to tell the truth?
5. What lesson did Lina learn?

Glossary of Words and Phrases

Word	Definition
account حساب	a way to keep track of money or information.
alarm منبه / جرس إنذار	a loud sound that warns you of danger.
ambulance سيارة إسعاف	a special vehicle that takes sick or hurt people to the hospital.
amazing رائع	something very wonderful or surprising.
apps تطبيقات	small programs on a tablet or phone.
attack هجوم	to try to hurt someone or something.
beautiful جميل	very pretty or nice to look at.
bread خبز	food made from flour, water, and yeast, baked into loaves.
brush يمسح بالفرشاة	to clean or tidy something by rubbing.
button زر	a small round thing you press to turn something on or off.
cake كعكة	a sweet dessert made with flour, eggs, and sugar.
camera كاميرا	a device that takes pictures or videos.
caring رعاية	showing kindness and concern for others.
cheese جبنة	a yummy food made from milk.
chicken دجاج	a farm bird that gives eggs and meat.
chips رقائق البطاطس	thin slices of potato fried until crispy.
cookies كوكيز	sweet baked treats, often round and crunchy.
courage شجاعة	the bravery to do something hard or scary.
cross يعبر	to go from one side to another, or to pass over something.
dangerous خطير	something that can hurt you.
difficult صعب	hard to do.
dinner عشاء	the main meal in the evening.
device جهاز	a gadget or tool that does a special job, like a tablet or phone.

dog	كلب	a furry animal kept as a pet or for work.
emergency	حالة طوارئ	a serious situation where you need help fast.
energy	طاقة	the power to do things, like play or run.
exercise	يمارس	moving your body to stay healthy.
fruits	فواكه	sweet foods from plants, like apples and bananas.
first aid	الإسعافات الأولية	help given to someone who is hurt before a doctor arrives.
furry	فروي - مغطى بالفرو	covered with soft hair or fur.
feathers	ريش	the soft covering on a bird.
fish	سمكة	a creature that lives in water and has fins and scales.
fly	يطير	to move through the air using wings.
food	طعام	things we eat to stay alive.
forest	غابة	a large area with many trees.
fries	بطاطس مقلية	sliced potatoes that are fried until crispy.
gathered	تجمع	to come together or collect things.
games	العب	fun activities or competitions to play.
garden	حديقة	a place where flowers, vegetables, or fruits grow.
help	يساعد	to give assistance.
helmet	خوذة	a hard hat worn to protect your head.
honey	عسل	sweet, sticky food made by bees.
honest	صديق	telling the truth.
hospital	مستشفى	a place where sick or injured people go for help.
hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	to feel pain or be injured.
ice	ثلج	frozen water.
inspire	يلهم	to make someone want to do something good.

Glossary

job	وظيفة	work someone does to earn money.
kind	عطوف	being nice and caring about others.
knife	سكين	a tool with a sharp edge used for cutting.
lollipop	مصاصة	a sweet, round candy on a stick.
lunch	غداء	a meal eaten in the middle of the day.
medal	ميدالية	a metal token given as a prize or award.
medicine	دواء	a substance that helps you feel better when you're sick.
menu	قائمة طعام	a list of foods you can order at a restaurant.
nod	يهز رأسه	to move your head up and down to show yes or agreement.
nervous	متوتر	feeling worried or scared.
nut	مكسرات - بندق	a hard-shelled seed that comes from trees.
ocean	محيط	a large body of salt water.
paw	كف	the foot of an animal like a dog or cat.
pizza	بيتزا	a round bread with sauce, cheese, and toppings.
police	شرطة	people whose job is to keep everyone safe.
protect	يحمي	to keep someone or something from getting hurt.
put on	يلبس	to wear or put clothing or accessories.
quickly	بسرعة	fast or in a short time.
rain	مطر	water falling from the sky.
respect	يحترم	to show kindness and care about someone or something.
rules	قواعد	the directions or laws to follow.
salty	مالح	tasting like salt.
safe	آمن	not in danger; protected.
safety	السلامة	the condition of being safe from harm.
soda	صودا	a sweet, fizzy drink.

signs	لافتات - علامات	symbols or pictures that give information.
shaky	مرتجف - مهتز	moving back and forth.
shirt	قميص	a piece of clothing worn on the upper body.
shelter	ماوى	a place that protects from weather or danger.
shout	يصرخ	to yell loudly.
stranger	غريب	someone you don't know.
strong	قوي	very powerful or able to do hard things.
survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة	to stay alive through difficult times.
support	يدعم	to help or back someone up.
sweets	حلوى	delicious treats like candy or cake.
table	منضدة	a piece of furniture with a flat top you eat or work on.
tail	ذيل	the part that sticks out from the back of an animal.
trouble	مشكلة	problems or difficulties.
TV	تلفاز	a device that shows shows, movies, or news.
unhealthy	غير صحي	not good for your body.
visit	يزور	to go see someone or go to a place.
wash	يقسل	to clean with water and soap.
whisper	يهمس	to talk very quietly.
wise	حكيم	knowing a lot and making good decisions.
wander out	يتجول	to walk around without a plan.
waves	أمواج	movements of the water or hands to say hello.
worried	قلق	feeling anxious or scared about something.
yogurt	زبادي	a healthy, creamy food made from fermented milk.
young	صغير السن	not old; in the early part of life.

Test (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 _leep

2 c_w

3 m_at

4 k_te

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We follow the at home to be safe.
a) rules b) books c) colors
- A doctor's is to help sick people.
a) story b) job c) rescue
- I eat with honey.
a) yogurt b) pasta c) phone
- careful when you cross the street.
a) Is b) Being c) Be
-, Omar trained hard.
a) First b) Than c) And
- Omar go to the park tomorrow.
a) is b) will c) was

3 Read and complete with the words below.

اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

wrong - nervous - happy

Lina forgot to finish her math homework. She felt 1).....
Her friend offered her to copy her homework. Lina said that wasn't right.
Cheating is 2).....

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

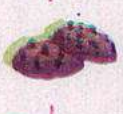
1 e r
s
u l



2 r s
t e
t e



3 e c
i s o
o k



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

We all share the Earth with animals. It is our job to respect them and their homes. We must not throw trash in the forest or the ocean. We can help by cleaning up and making sure animals have a safe place to live. When we protect nature, we help animals survive.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- We must animals and their homes.
a) respect b) eat c) share
- We can help by up.
a) going b) playing c) cleaning

B) Answer the following questions.

- What do we share the Earth with?
- What mustn't we do in the forest?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- shelter - to - Animals - survive - need - .
.....
- good - Milk - for - is - bones - our - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- can a fish fly
- omar has a phone

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Food

energy - meat - water

Test (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 zo_

2 play_r

3 _rain

4 yell_w

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Meat gives us
a) **protein** b) **sugar** c) **vitamins**
2. I send a message by
a) **games** b) **email** c) **TV**
3. What is the of the story?
a) **moral** b) **wash** c) **sick**
4. He can dress
a) **myself** b) **itself** c) **himself**
5. I play tennis football.
a) **and** b) **but** c) **or**
6. Youssef eats apple.
a) **a** b) **an** c) **some**

3 Read and complete with the words below.

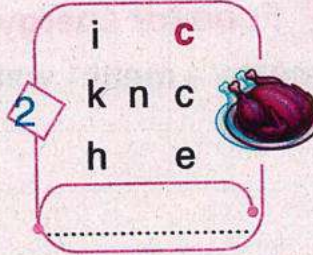
اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

mustn't - play - respect

We all share the Earth with animals. It is our job to 1) them and their homes. We 2) throw trash in the forest or the ocean. We must respect nature.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوين كلمة.



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Feryal Ashraf is a famous Egyptian athlete. She worked hard every day to get ready for a big event. She trained, practiced, and never gave up. At last, she won a gold medal for Egypt. Her school made a party to celebrate her. Everyone clapped and smiled for her.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Feryal never
a) trained b) gave up c) clapped
- Her school made a to celebrate her.
a) party b) game c) medal

B) Answer the following questions.

- Who is Feryal Ashraf?
- What did she win?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- can - A drone - photos - take - .
.....
- eat - with - I - honey - yogurt - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- where does the bear live?
- be careful

8 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Food for energy

energy - meat - water

Test (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters. استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 thr_w

2 gr_en

3 st_r

4 b_ok

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My friends me when I am sad.
a) support b) leader c) throw
- Always wear a when riding a bike.
a) bag b) phone c) helmet
- Lunch is my favorite
a) game b) meal c) dinner
- You talk to strangers.
a) must b) mustn't c) should
- shout in the classroom.
a) Don't b) Not c) No
- Would you like coffee?
a) a b) an c) some

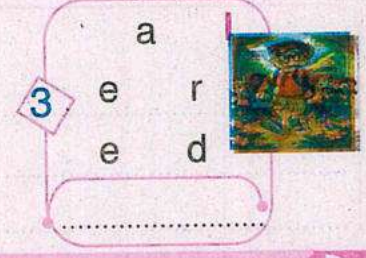
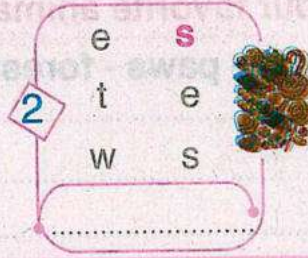
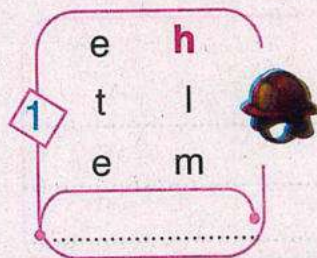
3 Read and complete with the words below. اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

screen - share - password

Technology is useful. To be safe, you mustn't look at the 1) for too long. You need a strong 2) to protect your account. Remember not to share your password with strangers.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكون كلمة.



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar plays games every day. He plays in the morning and in the evening. One day, he forgets to eat lunch. His sister says, "You must take a break." The next day, Omar plays games but also goes outside to play football. He feels happier and healthier.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Omar plays in the
a) morning b) afternoon c) school
- Now he feels and healthier.
a) angry b) faster c) happier

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does Omar play every day?
- What does he forget one day?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- put - in - I - my toys - box - the - .
.....
- respect - our - We - parents - should - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- when is the school event
- a bird has soft feathers

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Your favorite animal

bear - paws - forest

.....

.....

.....

Test (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 _lip

2 sh_rt

3 co_

4 lo_k

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- helps me do my homework.
a) **Screen** b) **Mouse** c) **Robot**
- are bad for our teeth.
a) **Milk** b) **Sweets** c) **Nuts**
- The athlete won a gold
a) **train** b) **medal** c) **coffee**
- I play games at night.
a) **must** b) **won't** c) **is**
- We build the tent
a) **myself** b) **ourselves** c) **himself**
- The tablet is good for games reading.
a) **and** b) **but** c) **or**

3 Read and complete with the words below.

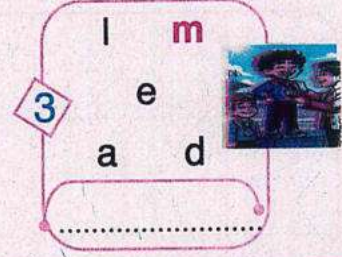
اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

mustn't - helmet - seat belt

Sara and Sally went out to play. Sara said, "Remember, safety comes first. You must wear a 1)..... when you ride a bike. You 2)..... talk to strangers." They follow the rules to stay safe.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Food gives us energy to play, learn, and grow. Different foods give us different kinds of energy. Meat gives our body protein to make us strong. Fruits and vegetables give us vitamins to keep us healthy. They also help us fight sickness. Sugar gives us quick energy, but too much sugar is not good for our health.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Meat gives our body
a) protein b) sugar c) fats
- Too much sugar is for our health.
a) good b) bad c) nice

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does food give us?
- What gives us vitamins?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

- must - You - a helmet - wear - .
.....
- swim - can - A fish - water - in the - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- samy has a phone
- don't shout

8 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Taking care of yourself

exercise - wash - eat

Test (5)

نضع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters. استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 g _ ass

2 w _ od

3 _ at

4 mo _ n

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The is big and salty.

a) desert

b) ocean

c) farm

2. In an, you must call for help.

a) emergency

b) party

c) school

3. Press the power to turn on a device.

a) screen

b) button

c) virus

4. It is a

a) lion wild

b) wild lion

c) lion tall

5. You leave the toys on the floor.

a) must

b) can

c) mustn't

6. The fish swim in the water.

a) can

b) can't

c) but

3 Read and complete with the words below. اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

energy - Milk - protein

Healthy food makes our body healthy. 1) is good for our bones. Eggs are full of 2) Fish helps our brains grow.

Rice gives us energy.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوين كلمة.

1 i n p
o m c
e a l



2 d m
i e c
e n i



3 b r
t
o o



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ali was reading a book in his room. When he finished, he left the book on the floor. His mother said, "Don't leave the book here. Someone may fall!" Ali listened to his mother and put the book back on the shelf. He followed the rules and was careful at home.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- Ali left the book on the
a) bed b) door c) floor
- He followed the and was careful at home.
a) rules b) ways c) cats

B) Answer the following questions.

- What was Ali doing in his room?
- Where did Ali put the book back?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- call - help - You - for - must - .
.....
- gives - Food - energy - us - play - to - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- I have a phone a tablet and a robot.
- how do you feel

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Safety rules

emergency - helmet - strangers

Test (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters. استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 t_uck

2 sl_ep

3 sn_w

4 c_ok

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. is rich in calcium.

a) Rice

b) Cheese

c) Fries

2. A horse has on its feet.

a) hooves

b) paws

c) claws

3. I use a for typing.

a) mouse

b) screen

c) keyboard

4. Mona can make salad

a) myself

b) himself

c) herself

5. A camel survive in the desert.

a) can

b) can't

c) won't

6. I have brother.

a) a

b) an

c) some

3 Read and complete with the words below. اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

home - robot - device

Samy loves technology. He wants to buy a 1)..... It can clean his room, answer questions, and remind him to do his homework. It is a good 2).....

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 e s b v
t e g
e l a



2 u y
o g
t r



3 b t
e t
a l



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Maya likes to play every day, but she often forgets to wash her hands and eat healthy food. One day, she felt sick. Her friend Salma said, "You must take care of yourself. Wash your hands, eat healthy food, rest, and exercise." Maya listened to Salma. She washed herself carefully, ate eggs and fruit, drank water, and rested when she felt tired. She also exercised a little every day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- One day, Maya felt
a) sick b) happy c) sad
- Maya a little every day.
a) played b) exercised c) rested

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does Maya like to do every day?
- Who is Salma?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- a strong - Ahmed - firefighter - is - .
.....
- don't - snacks - I - like - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- ali is a doctor
- a bear has big paws

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

My hero

firefighter - brave - fires

.....

.....

.....

Test (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 t_ee

2 f_rm

3 st_rm

4 s_ip

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Stay calm in an and ask for help.
a) emergency b) kitchen c) rule
- The fox lives in the
a) ocean b) desert c) sea
- means animals that live in nature and not owned by people.
a) Swim b) Button c) Wild
- The bear has claws.
a) soft b) hot c) sharp
- You listen to your teacher.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't
- She made lunch by
a) himself b) herself c) myself

3 Read and complete with the words below.

اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

shelter - cave - house

Noha: Where does the bear live?

Mona: It lives in a 1).....

Noha: So, the cave is its home.

Mona: Yes! That's called a 2).....

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1 e s b
f a k
r t a



2 o h
e r



3 e c
a m
a r



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Heba helped many people during hard times in Egypt. She always cared about others and wanted to make their lives better. First, she gave food and clothes to poor families so they could live happily. Then, she helped build hospitals to support sick people in need. Heba is also very honest and brave. She is not afraid to do what is right. Many Egyptians look up to her because she shows them how to be kind and strong.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

1. Heba always about others.
a) make b) cared c) lived
2. Heba is very and brave.
a) honest b) sad c) happy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who helped people?
4. What did she give to poor families?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. saw - he - First - the fire - .

2. doing - What - you - are - ?

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. I use apps to learn english
2. always wear a helmet

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

How you use technology

games - search - emails

Test (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 m_at

2 _wl

3 teach_r

4 _ruck

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- A is a special home for an animal.
a) habitat b) desert c) school
- I to keep my body strong and healthy.
a) study b) exercise c) watch
- I like to play and watch videos.
a) search b) emails c) games
- A bird has feathers.
a) deep b) hot c) soft
- Would you like soup?
a) a b) some c) an
- Do you want an apple a banana?
a) and b) but c) or

3 Read and complete with the words below.

اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

eat - call - emergency

Omar : Do you follow safety rules?

Mazen : Yes, I do.

Omar : What should you do if there is an 1) ?

Mazen : I should 2) for help and stay calm.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.

1

n l
h
c u



2

n k
i d



3

h a
t e e
t l



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Laila's friend asks for her password. She says, "No, that's private." Her friend laughs and says it's not important.

The next day, her friend's computer gets a virus from a game. Laila helps her fix it and shows how to make a strong password. Her friend says, "I will never share my password again."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- The password is
 a) private b) open c) low
- Her friend will never her password again.
 a) take b) put c) share

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does Laila's friend ask for?
- What happens to her friend's computer?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- games - We - school - play - after - .

- a nest - A bird - in - lives - .

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- be careful when you play
- i love pizza

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Protecting nature
share - respect - nature

Test (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 s_ve

2 guit_r

3 st_rm

4 tr_e

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Firefighters people from the fire.
a) rescue b) learn c) give
- We must our parents and teachers.
a) run b) respect c) shout
- Always wear a to protect your head.
a) helmet b) street c) shirt
- Laila do her homework tomorrow.
a) will b) were c) is
- I like English math.
a) but b) or c) and
- touch the knife!
a) Don't b) Not c) Doesn't

3 Read and complete with the words below.

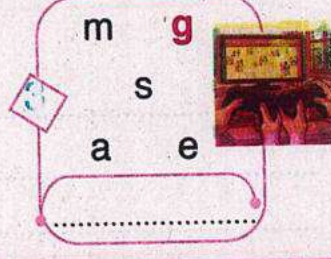
اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

medal - event - athlete

Feryal Ashraf is a famous Egyptian ¹⁾..... . She worked hard every day to get ready for a big event. She won a gold ²⁾..... for Egypt. Her school celebrated her.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Animals have different body parts that help them live. A furry bear has big paws and sharp claws. A bird has soft feathers and a long tail. The bird builds its nest high in a tree. A horse has hooves on its feet and a tail to push away flies. Their body parts help them stay safe in their habitats.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- A bird has feathers.
a) soft b) big c) tall
- A horse has on its feet.
a) claws b) legs c) hooves

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does the bear have?
- Where does the bird build its nest?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- secret - My - is - password - .
.....
- protect - should - We - nature - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- sara eats healthy food
- don't run

8 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Healthy food

energy - brain - milk

.....

.....

.....

Test (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters. استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 c _rn

2 wind _w

3 s _and

4 f _rm

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The won a medal in the race.

- a) athlete b) nurse c) artist

2. When you help someone, you them.

- a) get b) ride c) support

3. The protects us in the car.

- a) seat belt b) helmet c) first aid

4. I like apples, I don't like lemons.

- a) and b) but c) or

5. My dad travel to London tomorrow.

- a) will b) was c) are

6. Ahmed and Sara played games

- a) himself b) herself c) themselves

3 Read and complete with the words below. اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

pizza - fruit - lunch

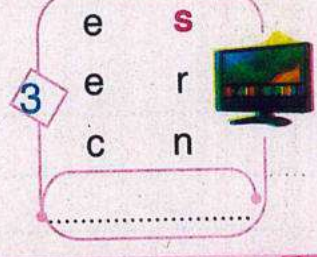
Samy is healthy. He wakes up early. For breakfast, he has

1) and vegetables. He drinks a lot of water to stay hydrated.

For 2) , he eats meat and rice. He also exercises every day.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Lily and Bahaa went to the forest. They saw an old bird's nest on the ground. A little bird was crying. "Oh no, its home is broken," said Lily. Bahaa carefully put the nest back in a tree. They cleaned up the trash they found and made the forest a cleaner place. The little bird was happy again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- The bird's nest was on the
a) tree b) ground c) desk
- They made the forest a place.
a) cleaner b) drier c) broken

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where did Lily and Bahaa go?
- How did the bird feel again?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

- out - your - Take - notebooks - math - .
.....
- salty - is - The ocean - big - and - .
.....

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- my mom teaches science
- i eat eggs cheese and fruit.

8 Write a paragraph of Three sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

Safety at home

rules - careful - toys

Test (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing letters.

استمع واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1 g_ve

2 c_rn

3 t_ip

4 _tand

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Be careful! You might on the ice.

a) slip

b) sleep

c) trap

2. I in bed when I am sick.

a) take

b) stay

c) run

3. We have a school every month.

a) meal

b) prize

c) event

4. shout in the library!

a) Don't

b) Didn't

c) Not

5. We built the tent

a) myself

b) ourselves

c) themselves

6. You respect your parents.

a) mustn't

b) shouldn't

c) must

3 Read and complete with the words below.

اقرأ وأكمل بالكلمات أدناه.

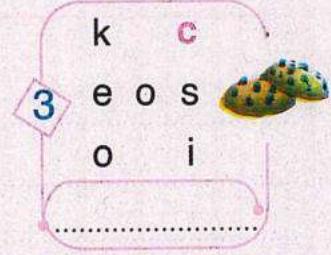
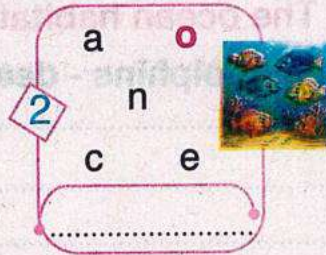
poor - put - cared

Heba helped many people during hard times in Egypt. She always

1)..... about others and wanted to make their lives better. First, she gave food and clothes to 2)..... families.

4 Look and rearrange the letters to make a word.

انظر وأعد ترتيب الحروف لتكوّن كلمة.



5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Animals have special body parts. A rabbit has soft fur and strong legs. A cat has sharp claws and fur. It uses its claws to climb and catch food. A duck has special feet to help it swim. Its feathers keep it dry. A bird has soft feathers and a long tail. These body parts help animals live and stay safe.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- A bird has and a long tail.
a) soft feathers b) big paws c) sharp claws
- Animals use their body parts to
a) run fast b) live and stay safe c) play games

B) Answer the following questions.

- What does a rabbit have?
- How do cat's claws help it?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- do - What - tablet - can - the - ?

- be - You - to your - must - kind - friends - .

7 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- the bear lives in a cave
- what is a shelter

8 Write a paragraph of **Three** sentences about: اكتب فقرة من ثلاث جمل عن:

The ocean habitat
big - dolphins - deep

Test 12 Al-Azhar

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You must follow rules.
a) **safety** b) **game** c) **school**
2. You must wear a when riding a bike.
a) **jacket** b) **helmet** c) **cap**
3. Don't talk to
a) **friends** b) **family** c) **strangers**

2 Fill in the missing letter. أكمل الحروف الناقصة.

- 1 sw_ et
- 2 c_ ke
- 3 st_ p
- 4 fl_

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. are salty snacks.
a) **Chips** b) **Cake** c) **Eggs**
2. The is hot and sandy.
a) **ocean** b) **desert** c) **forest**
3. I ate cheese.
a) **a** b) **an** c) **some**
4. A fish swim.
a) **can** b) **can't** c) **are**

4 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

omar is honest

don't run

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

medal - gold - Ali - won - a - .

wash - I - every - myself - day - .

can - A turtle - swim - .

4. do - live - Where - animals - ?

6 Write Three sentences about:

اكتب ثلاث جمل عن:

Healthy food

energy - protein - milk

Test 13 Al-Azhar

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Food gives us
a) **energy** b) **money** c) **fruit**
- gives us protein.
a) **Milk** b) **Meat** c) **Sugar**
- Water helps our work well.
a) **hands** b) **nature** c) **body**

2 Fill in the missing letter. أكمل الحروف الناقصة.

- 1 _leep 2 gre_n 3 sn_w 4 sw_m

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Firefighters people from fires.
a) **rescue** b) **wear** c) **teach**
- A can take photos from the sky.
a) **car** b) **bird** c) **drone**
- I made a sandwich
a) **myself** b) **yourself** c) **itself**
- run near the street.
a) **No** b) **Not** c) **Don't**

4 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. a turtle can swim

2. be careful

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. need - Animals - shelter - .

2. take - A drone - can - photos - .

3. is - Milk - good - bones - for - .

4. breakfast - I - at - eat - 7 a.m - .

6 Write Three sentences about:

اكتب ثلاث جمل عن:

Technology

phone - camera - emails

Test 14 Al-Azhar

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ali is a
a) teacher b) doctor c) swimmer
2. He helps people.
a) sick b) strong c) rich
3. He wears a special
a) shirt b) bag c) uniform

2 Fill in the missing letter. أكمل الحروف الناقصة.

1. c_w
2. tr_e
3. br_ve
4. r_bot

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. are full of protein.
a) Eggs b) Chips c) Sweets
2. We should our parents.
a) make b) respect c) swim
3. A camel live in the desert.
a) can b) can't c) have
4. I have a phone a tablet.
a) but b) or c) and

4 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

sara is an athlete

.....

nuts are healthy

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

exercise - to - I - keep - healthy - my body - .

.....

bear - The furry - big - has - paws - .

.....

run - on - Don't - the street - .

.....

Monday - is - The event - on - .

.....

6 Write Three sentences about:

اكتب ثلاث جمل عن:

The lion

wild - forest - claws

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Answers of paragraphs

Unit (1)

"How to stay safe in the street"

When you ride a bike, wear a helmet. Don't talk to strangers. Don't run on the street.

"Safety at home"

We have rules at home. Always be careful when you play. Put your toys in the box.

Unit (2)

"Healthy food"

Food gives us energy. Milk is good for our bones. Cheese is rich in calcium. Eggs give us protein.

"Staying healthy"

To stay healthy, you should exercise every day. You should wash carefully. You should eat vegetables and fruits.

Unit (3)

"People who help us"

Doctors help sick people. Police officers keep us safe. Nurses look after patients. Firefighters rescue people from fires.

"A famous athlete"

Feryal is a famous athlete. She won a gold medal. She trained hard. She never gave up.

Unit (4)

"Staying safe online"

To be safe online, you must have a strong password. Don't look at the screen for too long. Never share your password with anyone.

I download many apps on my phone. I search the internet to find information. I play games on my tablet.

Unit (5)

My favorite animal is the camel. It's tall and strong. It can survive in the desert. It has strong legs.

The bird has fluffy feathers. The bear is furry. They live in the jungle.

Test (1)

Food gives us energy to work. We eat meat and fruit to stay strong and healthy. We drink water every day to help our bodies work well.

Test (2)

Our bodies need food for energy. Meat and fruits give us important nutrients to keep us active. Drinking water helps us stay healthy and full of energy.

Test (3)

My favorite animal is the bear. It is big and strong and has big paws. The bear lives in the forest and I like it very much.

Test (4)

"Taking care of yourself"

I exercise to keep my body healthy. I wash my hands before I eat. I take medicine when I am sick.

Test (5)

"Safety rules"

In an emergency, you should call for help. You must wear a helmet when you ride a bike. Don't talk to strangers.

Test (6)

"My hero"

My hero is the firefighter. He is brave and strong. He saves people from fires.

Test (7)

"How you use technology"

I use apps to learn English. I search for information on the internet. I send emails on my computer.

Test (8)

"Protecting nature"

We all share the Earth with animals. We must respect their homes. We should be kind to nature.

Test (9)

"Healthy food"

Food gives us energy. Fish helps our brain grow. Eggs are full of protein. Milk is good for bones.

Test (10)

"Safety at home"

We have rules at home. Always be careful when you play. Put your toys in the box.

Test (11)

"The ocean habitat"

The ocean is big and salty. It is home for fish and dolphins. It is very deep.

Test (12)

"Healthy food"

Food gives us energy. Meat gives us protein. Milk is good for our bones.

Test (13)

"Technology"

I use the phone to talk to my friends. I use the camera to take photos. I send messages by emails.

Test (14)

"The lion"

The lion is wild. It lives in the forest. It has sharp claws.

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. sleep 2. train 3. star 4. trap

Unit (2)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. meat 2. cheese 3. beans 4. eat

Unit (3)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. kite 2. save 3. brave 4. robe

Unit (4)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. teacher 2. corn 3. star 4. player

Unit (5)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. moon 2. foot 3. cow 4. snow

Test (1)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. sleep 2. cow 3. meat 4. kite

Test (2)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. zoo 2. player 3. train 4. yellow

Test (3)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. throw 2. green 3. star 4. book

Test (4)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. slip 2. short 3. cow 4. look

Test (5)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. grass 2. wood 3. eat 4. moon

Test (6)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. truck 2. sleep 3. snow 4. cook

Test (7)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. tree 2. farm 3. storm 4. slip

Test (8)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. meat 2. owl 3. teacher 4. truck

Test (9)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. save 2. guitar 3. storm 4. tree

Test (10)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. corn 2. window 3. stand 4. farm

Test (11)

- Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. gave 2. corn 3. trip 4. stand

Test (12)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

You must follow safety rules. You must wear a helmet when riding a bike. And don't talk to strangers.

Test (13)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Food gives us energy. Meat gives us protein. Water helps our body work well.

Test (14)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ali is a doctor. He helps sick people. He wears a special uniform.